

# أوائل المملكة من طلاب الأستاذ ثائر النمورة

**في السنوات الأخيرةفي المدارس والمراكز الثقافية** أكثر مؤلاء الطلاب قد حصلوا على العلامة الكاملة في اللغة الإنجليزية

المدرسة/ المركز	المعدل	الفرع	الترتيب على المملكة	الاســـــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ
الرواد الدولية	100	العلمي	الأول	مصعب غزال
م. رؤية البيادر والنموره	100	العلمي	الأولى	راما بشتاوي
مركز الطيبة الخضراء	99.7	الأدبي	الأولى	نبأ عبدالله
مركز الطيبة الخضراء	99.8	العلمي	الثانية	نور قاسم
الجزيرة	98.9	العلمي	الثانية	سيناميس دريع
مركز الطيبة الخضراء	99.5	الأدبي	الثانية	شيرين أبو دية
مركز الطيبة الخضراء	99.7	العلمي	الثالث	خالد زيتون
مركز الطيبة الخضراء	99.7	العلمي	الثالثة	رنيم السنيد
الرواد الدولية	99.7	العلمي	الثالث	محمد عبيد
مركز الطيبة الخضراء	99.3	الأدبي	الرابعة	زينة العزة
مركز المدينة الثقافي	98.4	الأدبي	الرابعة	حنين عاصي
الجزيرة	98.5	العلمي	العاشرة	أسيل القباني
مركز أبو دريع الثقافي	96.1	معلوماتية	العاشرة	روان الجيلاني

الفصل الأول

### طريقة دراسة مادة اللغة الإنجليزية والاستعداد الجيد للامتحان الوزاري

 لدراسة القطع (النصوص) والتمكن منها: لا بد من حفظ جدول المعاني بداية كل قطعة باللغة العربية
 مبدئيا - وذلك قبل البدء بقراءة القطعة، ثم محاولة فهم معنى كل سطر في القطعة وترجمته بناء على جدول المعاني والترجمة المرفقة. ولا بد من قراءة النص مرتين على الأقل.
 كما وأنصح بوضع نقاط لأفكار القطعة كملخصات سريعة بجانب النص.
 بعد ذلك، نبدأ بالأسئلة المرفقة بعد القطعة وقراءة السؤال مرتين على مرتين على مرابي الفع المعاني بداية على جدول بعد ذلك، نبدأ بالأسئلة المرفقة بعد القطعة وقراءة السؤال مرتين بتمعن وفهم معناه ومحاولة الإجابة عنه،

أما الأدب Literature Spot : فيجب فهم النص وحفظ ما يلزم من المعاني والتدرب على التحليل الأدبي وحل المعاني والتدرب على التحليل الأدبي وحل جميع أسئلة الدوسية.

- 2. لدراسة القواعد : نقوم بدراسة الشرح جيداً وتحليله وتقسيمه إلى أفكار، وحفظ الـ forms، والـ functions، والـ forms، وما يلزم حفظه بناء على توصيات المعلم، وحفظ الجداول المرفقة، ودراسة الأمثلة ومن ثم الانتقال إلى تمارين وأسئلة الدوسية ثم أسئلة الكتاب ثم الأسئلة الوزارية الموجودة في الدوسية الأساسية.
  و تكون الطريقة الصحيحة بمحاولة الحل دون النظر للجواب، ومن ثم التأكد من صحة الجواب.
  و تكون الطريقة الصحيحة بمحاولة الحل دون النظر الجواب، ومن ثم التقال إلى المرفقة من أم التقال إلى الماسية.
- 3. لدراسة المعاني :
  أ. حفظ جداول معاني القطع بالعربية لسؤال Fill in the gaps ، وبالإنجليزية لسؤال القطعة مع الإملاء
  أ. حفظ جداول معاني القطع بالعربية لسؤال حفظها من الـ Fill in the gaps وذلك لسؤال الـ SB .
  ب. حفظ معاني الأفعال الاصطلاحية (Phrasal verbs) إنجليزي وعربي مع الإملاء.
- ج. حفظ معاني المصطلحات (idioms) إنجليزي وعربي مع الإملاع.
   4. لدراسة الاشتقاقات: يجب حفظ الجدول المعتمد للاشتقاقات الأكثر ورودا في الكتاب + الـ rules التي تبين المواضع. والتدرب على الجمل المعطاة في الدوسية. وينبغي حفظ اشتقاقات كل المعاني احتياطا والموجودة أصلا بالـ GLOSSARY آخر كتاب الطالب (SB) + كلمات التمارين.
- 5. لدراسة الوظائف اللغوية (Language Function): حفظ الـ functions المتعلقة بالأزمنة (Tenses) والقواعد والأبنية اللغوية الأخرى كالروابط وغيرها الموجودة في المادة المطلوبة وزارياً.
- 6. لدراسة سؤال الـ EDITING : يجب حفظ إملاء كلمات معاني القطع، والتدرب على الأسئلة الواردة في هذا الشأن، مع وجود خطأ قواعدي أو بعلامات الترقيم ونحو ذلك. (سؤال mix).
- 7. **لدراسة الـ** OPEN (FREE)، وهو سؤال (GUIDED WRITING، لذا فهناك عدة طرق معتمدة للتعامل مع هذا السؤال، مع ضرورة التركيز على المطلوب بنص السؤال، واستخدام أدوات ربط مناسبة وتجنب الأخطاء الإملائية واللغوية. (يتم التدرب مع الأستاذ خلال الحصص الصفية ضروري)
- 8. لدراسة الـ FREE WRITING، وهو عبارة عن مهارات مبنية على حصيلة ما تعلمه الطالب طيلة حياته من لغة وأفكار، وملكة كتابة وتعبير، وتسلسل منطقي للأفكار، ينبغي الرجوع إلى ملحق الكتابة ومراجعة النقاط الرئيسية وتعليقات المعلم على ما كتبه الطالب من مواضيع. (استخدام أدوات الربط المناسبة، وعلامات الترقيم من الأمور الهامة جدا إضافة إلى تسلسل الأفكار).

(استخدام الوات الربط المناسبة، وعلامات الترقيم من الأمور الهامة جدا إضافة إلى تسلسل الأفخار). 9. للامتحان الوزاري:

نبدأ مراجعة المادة بالدوسية الأساسية ، مثلا قواعد الوحدة الأولى ثم قطعها وهكذا. وبعد الانتهاء من الدوسية الأساسية، نراجع مراجعة أولى على الامتحانات الشهرية والامتحان التجريبي، والنماذج التدريبية (المقترحة)... إلخ، ونختم بحل الأسئلة الوزارية للسنوات السابقة.

ثائر النمورة

الفصل الأول





وأكثر الناس عايشة بال passive voice وهمها ال reported speech وبكل ال Tenses للأسف .. ما في عندهم إلا ال present wishes وال past regrets وكمان بالماضي used to... رضوا يكونوا في آخر الأمم مثل ال Question Tag.. حتى واجباتهم بدهم ال Causative فيها.. حلو الواحد يكون مستقل بذاته مش مثل ال If clause و ال main clause وال clause يعنها أقلها كون Cleft Sentence يا سيدي ولا تقبل بال Comparison ، وأي حد بدو يقلل من الأدب معك خليه بالقوة يستخدم معك ال Indirect Questions وال Impersonal Passive وعندها بتعرف لمين تستخدم ال Definite Article ومين بستحق ال Indefinite Articles أو ال Zero Article.. نحن قوم ما بنفع معه الفروقات بين ال British English و ال American English ولا غيرهم بس بفرق معنا "إن أكرمكم عند الله أتقاكم". بقلمى

#ثائریات #Th@2e<sup>®</sup> Nammoura

ممنوع اللطش إلا بالنسبة © All rights reserved.



 $\bigcirc$  Comment  $\Rightarrow$  Share



الفصل الأول



# **GRAMMAR** (القواعد)

إعداد ثائر النمورة (ماجستير في اللغة الإنجليزية وآدابها) محاضر جامعي ومترجم دولي سابق مدارس أكاديمية الرواد الدولية مدارس الجزيرة الثانوية سابقاً

لمزيد من المساعدة والأسئلة المقترحة تفضلوا بزيارة الصفحة الرسمية:

www.facebook.com/thaer.nammoura

### Module 1

### **TENSES**

Unit 1

### المضارع البسيط المضارع البسيط

المحفظ غيبا [وزارياً) لكل الأزمنة كل زمن بزمنه : (sourctions (uses / usage) • المحفظ غيبا [وزارياً) لكل الأزمنة كل زمن بزمنه We use this tense to talk about نستخدم هذا الزمن للحديث عن..... أشياء دائما صحيحة (غير مقترنة بزمن) 2. things that are always true. أشياء روتينية متكررة في الحاضر . 3. things that happen as a routine in the present أحداث مجدولة زمنياً وثابتة في المستقبل . 4. scheduled or fixed events in the future هو التصريف الأوّل من الفعل :Form • It is verb one. e.g.  $\sqrt{go}$ went gone **Positive** (+): - If the subject is singular, you should add an (-s) to the end of the verb. e.g. He reads stories monthly. إذا كان الفاعل مفرداً فإننا نضيف (s) في نهاية الفعل . - If the subject is singular, and the verb ends with (- o, -x, - s, - ss, - ch, - sh, vou should add an (- es). z), ولكن إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (es) فإننا نضيف (-o, -x, -s, -ss, -ch, -sh, -z) فإننا نضيف (es) إلى نهاية الفعل بشرط أن بكون الفاعل مفر داً أيضاً e.g. Sami usually relaxes when he feels tired.

- If the subject is singular, and the verb ends with -y preceded by a consonant not a vowel, you should replace the -y by an -i, and then add the -es. e.g. He carries heavy things. أما إذا انتهى الفعل بـ ( y ) مسبوق بحرف صحيح وليس علة فإننا نقلب الـ y إلى ( i ) ثم نضيف (es) إلى ( i ) ثم نضيف (es

e.g. Khalid often carries heavy things.

### Negative (-):

- (*To be* – is, am, are): We only add the word (**not**) after the verb. e.g. He is lazy. (+)  $\rightarrow$  He is not lazy. (-).

### يعني أي فعل غير فعل الكينونة (to be: (to be) -

If the subject is singular, we should negate the verb as follows: e.g. Ali **likes** milk (+). Ali **does not like** milk (-).

If the subject is plural, we negate the verb as follows: e.g. They **like** milk (+). They **do not like** milk (-). <u>**OR**</u> They <u>**don't like**</u> milk.

#### **Question** (?):

(To be): Is / am / are + subject+ complement? e.g. Are they students?
Other verbs:
Does + singular subject + base form + complement?
e.g. Does he go to school every day?
Do + plural subject+ base form + complement?
e.g. Do they go to school every day?

المؤشرات والدلائل - "ظروف التكرار" وغيرها :(Indicators / markers) (Indicators / markers)

usually, always, often, sometimes, rarely, hardly, seldom, occasionally, (every day, month,...), (a day, a week, ...), (daily, weekly, ...), from time to time, (at 10 p.m.), **these days**, nowadays, ... etc.

### **Examples:**

- 1. Muslims ------ five times a day. (pray)
- 2. The Earth ----- around the Sun. (go)
- 3. Lina -----a vegetarian. (not, eat) / (be)
- 4. Mahdi always ------ his own desktop computer. (fix)
- 5. The plane ----- at the airport at 7 a.m. (arrive)
- 6. Methane ----- a powerful greenhouse gas. (be)
- 7. Mr. Tha'er Al-Nammoura ----- as a teacher of English in Jordan. (work)
- 8. The documentary movie ----- at 11 p.m. tonight. (start)
- 9. Sami usually ------ online games in his spare time. (play)
- 10. Ahmad is a strong man. He ----- heavy things easily. (carry)

### **Answers:**

1. pray2. goes3. does not eat / is4. fixes5. arrives6. is7. works8. starts9. plays10. carries

### أسئلة وزارية (سنوات سابقة)

1. Eid Al-Adha is a celebration that ..... on the 10<sup>th</sup> of Thu-Al-Hijjah according to the Islamic Calendar. (**begin**) ► 2017 (W)

- 2. My family ..... a trip to Europe every year.
  (plans , was being planned , would plan , is planned) ▶ 2019 (1)
  - الفصل الأول

- 2 -

### المضارع المستمر (Progressive) Tense المضارع المستمر

Function / Use: This tense is used .....
 1. to talk about something that is happening at the moment of speaking.
 للحديث عن شيء يحدث في وقت التكلم
 2. to describe something temporary
 لوصف شيء مؤقت gain adjustry
 3. for actions that happen repeatedly in the present. We use it with (always).
 always لأفعال تحدث بشكل متكرر في الحاضر، ويستخدم مع المؤشر always
 4. to talk about <u>the future</u>, where something has been planned.
 للحديث عن المستقبل عندما يتم التخطيط المسبق للمستقبل.

#### • Form:

(+): is / am / are + (verb- ing). e.g. Ahmed is playing football now.
(-): is not/ are not/ am not+ (verb- ing). e.g. Ahmed is not playing football now.
(?): Is/ Are/ Am+ subject+ (verb-ing)+ complement? e.g. Is Ahmed playing football now?

#### المؤشرات (الدلائل): (الدلائل) Indicators (Keywords)

now, right now, at the moment, at this time, Look! , Be careful! , Listen! ...

ملحوظة :مع الأفعال غير المستمرة (التي لا تقبل الـ ing - ) نستخدم صيغة الـ simple بدلاً من المستمر. Stative verbs: love, like, prefer, hate, dislike, see, have (own), think (believe), know, understand, need, want, remember, realize, be, [start, begin]...etc.

#### **Examples:**

- 1- Yousef is wearing jeans now. (wear)
- 2- He is waiting for a bus at this moment. (wait for)
- 3- Listen! Someone is reading the Holy Qur'an. (read)

#### **Exercise:**

- 1. The boys ------ in the court now. (play)
- 2. Sami and Yousef ----- to each other at the moment. (talk)
- 3. Windows ------ now. This is typed on the computer screen. (shut down)
- 4. Amal ----- her room at this time. (clean)
- 5. The students ----- to their teacher at this time. (listen)
- 6. Now, I ------ that you're right, my friend! (think)
- 7. Be careful! A car ------ from the opposite direction. (approach)
- 8. Listen! Someone ----- at the door. (knock)
- 9. Look! It ------ heavily. We can't go outside today! (rain)

10. My neighbour ------ his house next week. I'm sure about this. (paint)

### Answers:

1. are playing	2. are talking	3. <b>is</b> shu <b>tti</b> ng down	4. is cleaning	5. are listening
6. think	7. is approaching	8. is knocking	9. is raining	10. is painting

- 3 -

الفصل الأول

### المضارع التام البسيط Present Perfect Simple

Affirmative (+):has/ have + V.3Negative (-):has not / have not +V.3Question (?):has / have + Subject + V.3 ?

#### **Uses (Functions):**

1- To express <u>finished</u> activities at unspecific time in the past, but their <u>CONSEQUENCES</u> (results) are still there at present.

يستخدم هذا الزمن للحديث عن أفعال وأنشطة **منتهية** في الماضي، إلا أنّ نتائجها لا ز الت قائمة (موجودة) في الوقت الحاضر.

(To talk about something that was true in the past and continues to be true in the present)

1) I have cut my finger. It's bleeding now. (cut)

2) She has already prepared for her presentation. (prepare)

2- To talk about achievements: يستخدم هذا الزمن كذلك للحديث عن الإنجازات

### (To discuss our experience up to the present)

e.g.

1) The student has already finished his project. (finish)

2) I have just done my homework. (do)

**NOTE:** With **stative (non-continuous) verbs**: love, like, prefer, hate, dislike, see, have (own), think (believe), know, understand, need, want, remember, realize, be, [start, begin]...etc.

#### e.g.

- 1. I have known him since 2000. (know)
- 2. Sami has had this mall for 10 years. (have)



النمورة

### المؤشرات (الدلائل) <u>Key words:</u>

already, yet, just, since, for, lately, recently, ever, so far, up to now, up till now, still, once, twice, (five) times, so (he) can, today, (this week, month, year,...)

#### **EXERCISE**

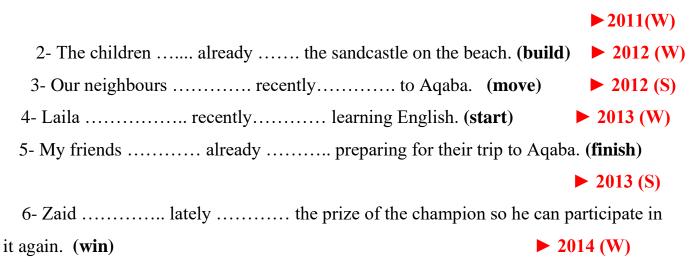
- Maher just just at the airport. (arrive)
2- It since last week in my city. (not / rain)
3- The policemen the criminals. But it has not been taken legal
action against them yet. (arrest)
- Nobody so far. (come)
5- It's the most impressive masterpiece I ever (see).
5- By the way, you can use my car now, I it. (repair)
7- I already Petra with my family. (visit)
3- I'm so sorry! I just the window. (break)
9- I in the same company since 1996. (be)
0- I recently a new flat in the city. (buy)

#### **Model Answers:**

1- has / arrived	2- has not rained	3- have arrested	4- has come	5- have / seen
6- have repaired	7- have / visited	8- have/ broken	9- have been	10- have/ bought

### أسئلة وزارية

1- Maher ..... his driving test, so he can borrow his brother's car next week. (pass)



7- The government ...... recently ...... new laws to try to reduce the crime rate in

the country. (announce)

► 2014 (S)

Model Answers: 1- has passed2- have / built3- have / moved4- has /started5- have/ finished6. has /won7- has / announced

المضارع التام المستمر Present Perfect Continuous

Form:

(+): has / have + been + V-ing

(- ): has not / have not + been + V- ing

(?): has / have + Subject + been + V-ing?

**Functions (uses):** 

أحداث غير منتهية المحداث غير منتهية

(بدأت في الماضي، واستمرت للوقت الحاضر، وسوف تستمر في المستقبل على الأغلب)

To talk about something that began in the past and continues in the present ; an action repeated many times from the past until the present.

e.g.

1. I <u>have been waiting</u> for Ali *for* four hours but he hasn't come yet. (be, wait) 2. She has been working on her project. I think she needs more time. (be, work)

2- Activities from the <u>recent</u> past which have visible <u>consequences</u> at present. أحداث في الماضي القريب ولها آثار ها و عواقبها الظاهرة، ويكون التركيز على الحدث (activity) واستمراريته في الماضي أكثر من النتيجة (result) بخلاف المضارع التام البسيط.

#### e.g.

- 1. They're out of breath. They <u>have been running</u> for a long time. (be , run)
- 2. He is exhausted. He **has been cleaning** his room all night. (be, clean)
- 3. I have been painting the house. That's why I have some paint on my clothes. (be, paint)

Key words: (الدلائل (المؤشرات) all day, all night, all morning, all evening, all the time, for, since, for (five) years now

ملحوظة مهمة جداً: جرت العادة في امتحان الوزارة أن يكون شكل الخيار بين الأقواس على النحو الآتي:
 (be, V) ، الأمر الذي يساعد الطالب (-ة) عند الإجابة.
 ثائر النمورة

- 6 -

#### **Exercise:**

#### **Model Answers:**

- 1- has been watching 2- has been writing 3- have been preparing 4- has been doing
- 5- has been working 6- has been looking for 7- has been studying
- 8- has been explaining 9- has been talking 10- has been raining

### أسئلة وزارية منوعة

1- Nour an essay all morning. (be, write)	► 2011(W)
2- Hatem looks tired. He his science project all night. (be, do)	► 2011(S)
3- The detectives people all week. (be, interview)	► 2012 (W)
4- The child has all night. (be, sleep)	► 2012 (S)
5- Jamal and Fawaz have evening classes for a few weeks now	. (be, take)
	► 2013 (W)
6- Fadia has to be a nurse since 2010. (be, train)	► 2013 (S)
7- Hassan looks very pale. He has very well recently. (not, be	, sleep)
	► 2014 (W)
8- How nice to sit down! I've for three hours non-stop. (be, walk)	► 2015 (W)
9- Asem: I think the waiter has forgotten us. We (1)(be, wait) he over half an hour and nobody (2) (take) your order yet.	re for
ثائر النمورة - 7 - الفصل الأول	

Salma: I think you're right. He has been walking by us at least twenty times. Heprobably thinks we (3) ...... already ...... (order) ▶ 2015 (S)10. The government has ...... hardly to raise the citizen's awareness of humanrights. (be, work) ▶ 2016 (W)

11. The workers ...... at the moment. They're on a break.

(not, work) ► 2018 (W)

- 12. Nadia ..... her homework for two hours. ▶ 2019 (2)
  (have done , have been doing , has been doing , had been done)
- 13. People ..... microwaves in their houses since they were invented.A. have been used B. had used C. were using D. have been using ▶2022

#### Model Answers:

1. has been writing2. has been doing3. have been interviewing4. been sleeping5. been taking6. been training7. not been sleeping8. been walking9. (1) have been waiting(2) has taken(3) have / ordered10. been working11. are not working12. has been doing13. D

### A MIXED QUESTION (REVISION)

#### Correct the verbs between brackets.

1. These days, many people smart phones. They have something like
technological phobia. ( <b>not, use</b> )
2. The programmer has on the program since 8 p.m. (be, work)
3. Maher lately some research. (do)
4. Samer for his presentation at the moment. (prepare)
5. Mahdi has been his car all morning. (fix)
6. Cars, wheat and medicines some of Jordan's imports. (be)
7. Muna historical sites every year. (visit)
8. Look at the boys outside, they football. (play)
9. Every rule an exception. (have)
10. Our neighbour recently his house. (paint)
Answers:
<u>ثائر النمورة</u> - 8 - <u>الفصل الأول</u>

Past Simple الماضي البسيط

هو التصريف الثاني من الفعل V.2 (+): V.2

- (-): ► (be): was not / were not
  - ► (Others): did not + baseform (infinitive)
- (?):▶ (be): was / were + Subject + complement?
  ▶ (Others): did + Subject + baseform + complement?

#### Uses (FUNCTIONS):

1. To talk about something that started and finished in the past.

■ يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط عند الحديث عن أحداث حصلت وانتهت في زمن محدد في الماضي، ولا علاقة للحاضر بها، ومن الجدير بالذكر أن هذا الزمن هو زمن السرد القصصي.

e.g.

- 1- I watched TV yesterday. (watch)
- 2- The First World War broke out in 1914. (break out)
- 3- She was not sad last night. (not, be)

#### 2. To describe a routine in the past.

■ كما ويستخدم عند الحديث عن عادات وأمور تكرارية في الماضي.

- 1- I *usually* **went** to Aqaba on Fridays when I was younger. (go)
- 2- Samer *always* studied hard when he was a student in the university. (study)

3. To talk about something that was true for an extended period of time in the past. In this case, we use it with a time phrase.

■ للحديث عن شيء كان صحيحاً لفترة ممتدة في الماضي، وفي هذه الحالة لا بد من استخدام عبارة ظرف زمان.

المؤشرات (الدلائل) :Key words

yesterday, last (week, month,...etc), ago, in the past, in (1991), when I was a child, in my childhood, when I was younger,  $(V.2 + thus + V.2) \dots$ 

#### **Exercise:**

1- I	an interesting sto	ry last week.	(read)
2- She	her teacher in	the mall yesterday.	(see)
3- We all	an explosion	last night.	(hear)
4- I	my friend thre	e weeks ago.	(visit)
5- The boy	in the Dead	Sea last month.	(swim)
6- Ali	French when he	e was a child.	(not/study)
	الفصل الأول	- 9 -	ثائر النمورة

7- Sami	there last lecture.	(not / be)
8- Maher	. his homework last night.	(finish)
9- The manager	Ali yesterday.	(promote)
10- Fadi	a good story three weeks ago.	(write)

#### **Model Answers:**

- 1- read2- saw6- didn't study7- was not
- 3- heard 8- finished

4- visited9- promoted10- wrote

► 2012(S)

### أسئلة وزارية

1. Hatim's father ..... **last year**. He had worked for the same company all his life. (retire) ► 2011(W)

- 2. Fatima ...... her homework three hours ago. (finish) ► 2011 (S)
- 3. Hatem had saved his document before viruses ......his computer.(crash) ► 2012(W)
- 4. The plane ...... a few minutes ago. (land)
- 5. After we <u>had finished</u> our dinner, we ..... into the garden. (go) **2013** (W)
- 6. Sultan ..... a book of mine yesterday. (borrow)  $\geq 2013$  (S)
- 7. The documentary film was interesting thus I ..... it so much.(enjoy) > 2014 (W)

#### **Model Answers:**

1- retired 2- finished 3- crashed 4- landed 5- went 6- borrowed 7- enjoyed



#### Form:

- (+) was / were + v-ing
- (-) was not / were not + v-ing
- (?) Was / Were + Subject+ v-ing ...?

#### **Functions:**

We use the past continuous to ...

- 1. talk about something which was happening before and after another action in the past. للحديث عن شيء كان يحدث قبل وبعد حدث آخر في الماضي
- 2. show that something happened for a long time in the past.

الفصل الأول

لعرض شيء حدث في الماضي لفترة طويلة . ملحوظة: يقترن الماضي المستمر (ذو الفترة الطويلة) مع زمن آخر يقاطعه (ذو فترة قصيرة) وهو الماضي البسيط .

ثائر النمورة

- 10 -

#### Examples:

1. I was studying when my father came. (study)

2. Sami fell down **while** he **was running. (run)** 

3. At this time last week, the students <u>were listening</u> to Mr. Tha'er Al-Nammoura in the classroom.

#### Keywords:

\* V.2 + while (as) + (was / were + v-ing)

\* was / were + v-ing + when + V.2

\* at this time yesterday (last night ,...)

### **Exercise:**

1. The students ------ an experiment when the principal entered the lab. (do)

2. I ----- down the street when it began to rain. (walk)

3. At seven o'clock yesterday, they ----- for the contest. (prepare)

4. Last year at this time, I ----- school. (attend)

### **5.** While I ------ (study) in one room of our apartment, my roommate ----- (have) a party in the other room.

6. Someone knocked at the door as we ----- our brunch. (have)

7. My mother called me while I ------ . (**pray**)

8. When my friend phoned me, I ----- my car. (repair)

9. Nour ------ her room when the movie started. (clean)

10. The boy interrupted his father while he -----. (speak)

Answers: 1. were doing 2. was walking 3. were preparing 4. was attending
5. was studying / was having 6. were having 7. was praying
8. was repairing 9. was cleaning 10. was speaking

الماضي التام البسيط Past Perfect Simple

### Form:

(+): had + V.3 (-):had not + V.3 (?): had +Subject+V.3+complement?

#### **Use (Function):**

We use this structure to talk about actions that happened before a specific moment in the past.

- 11 -

نستخدم الماضي التام عندما يحدث زمنان (حدثان) في الماضي، فيكون الزمن الأقدم ماضياً تاماً 40.3 had+، والزمن الأحدث (الأقرب للحاضر) ماضياً بسيطاً 2.2

الفصل الاول

ثائر النمورة

#### **Examples:**

- 1- I had done my homework *before* I went shopping. (do)
- 2- After he had bought a car, someone stole it. (buy)
- 3- The man realized that he had lost his wallet in the market. (lose)

### المؤشرات (الدلائل) <u>Key words:</u>

before, after, by the time..., by the end of last year, until, as soon as, (realized), already (with V.2), (V.2 .... because .... never .... before), ...

\* S+ (had+V.3) *before* + S+V.2 \* S + V.2 after + S + had + V.3

#### **Exercise:**

- 1- Ahmed ...... some notes before he came to the classroom. (write)
- 2- After you ...... me, I kept your books quickly. (tell)
- 4- Muna ...... hard before she went to the exam. (study)
- 5- After Reema ...... her work, she phoned her mum. (finish)
- 6- She *felt* sad *because* she ...... never ...... an exam before. (fail)
- 7- By 2000, I ..... my job as a translator. (leave)
- 8- Salem ...... from university by the end of last term. (graduate)
- 9- The driver ..... his car before he started the trip. (check)
- 10- By the time the lecturer arrived, the students ...... a seat. (have)
- 11-I ..... there for an hour until my friend arrived. (be)



13- Maher felt nervous because he ..... never ..... in the Dead Sea / *M.O.E*, 2011 (S) before. (swim) 14 - Hassan's parents bought him a bicycle after he ...... good marks in his / M.O.E, 2014 exams. (get) **(S)** 15 - Amer slept deeply last night after he ..... five hundred kilometers without a break. (drive) / M.O.E (2015 (W))

16- Tala took three English courses in the British Council and then she went to Britain to study medicine. ► 2016 (W) Before Tala .....

الفصل الأول

- 12 -

ثائر الن<u>مورة</u>

17- Salam ...... her report when the light in her room switched itself off. ▶ 2020
A) was typing B) is typing C) types D) was typed
18- The kids ...... football in the park before it started to rain. ▶ 2021
A) have played B) are playing C) play D) had played

#### Model Answers:

1- had written 2- had told 3- had escaped 4- had studied 5- had finished
6- had / failed 7- had left 8- had graduated 9- had checked 10- had had
11- had been 12- had left 13-had / swum 14- had got 15- had driven
16- Before Tala went to Britain to study medicine, she had taken three English courses in the British Council.

17- A 18- D

#### Q: Study the following sentences and then answer the questions below:

- 1- A: When I arrived at the office, my brother left.
  - B: When I arrived at the office, my brother had left.

Which sentence indicates that the speaker did not see his brother?

- .....
- 2- A: When we got there, the match started.
  - B: When we got there, the match had started.

Which sentence indicates that the speakers missed part of the match?

.....

- 3- A: When I arrived at the airport, the plane took off.
  - B: When I arrived at the airport, the plane had taken off.

Which sentence indicates that the speaker saw the plane on earth?

.....

Model Answers: 1- B 2- B 3- A

### **A MIXED QUESTION (REVISION)**

### Correct the verbs between brackets.

- 1. The child ..... his father yesterday. (mimic)
- 2. After I ..... the task, I went to the mall immediately. (do)
- 3. While Maher ...... a novel, someone broke the window. (read)
- 4. The businessman ..... a deal last week. (do)
- 5. By 2015, my friend ..... five cars. (buy)
- 6. Vegetarians ...... meat at all. This is really healthy. (not, eat)
- 7. Listen! Someone ..... us. (call)
- 8. At this time yesterday, Ali .....to Madaba. (drive)
- 9. The student ...... Petra three weeks ago. (visit)
  - الفصل الأول

- 13 -

- 11. Before I had lunch, I ..... my homework. (do)
- 12. Khalid ..... as he was running. (fall down)
- 13. When you ..... (work) hard, you ..... the respect of your boss. (earn)
- 14. The man ...... recently ...... his car in a remarkable auction. (sell)
- 15. Maher ..... already ..... some arrangements for the bargain. (make)

#### Answers: \_\_\_\_\_

# **Future with (will)**

**Form:** will + base form (infinitive) / will not (won't) + base form **Functions** (uses / usages):

**1.** To talk about the future if we are predicting it *without* EVIDENCE

للحديث عن المستقبل عند التنبؤ بدون وجود دليل

ثائر ال<u>تمورة</u>

2. To express spontaneous decisions للتعبير عن القرارات العفوية
 3. Offers (I will help you. Don't worry!) - العروض وتقديم شيء ما
 <u>Keywords (Markers):</u>

perhaps, maybe, probably, likely, I think, I hope ..., tomorrow, next (week), tonight, today, in the future, forever... etc.

### **Exercise:**

- 1. Probably, it ----- heavily today. (rain)
- 2. I hope that Ali ----- to the festival tomorrow. (come)
- 3. I think that Muna ------ a high degree in the next English exam. (get)
- 4. A: Do you think that Sami may come?
- B: Maybe, he ----- late. (come)
- 5. A: What would you like to drink? (in a coffee shop)
- B: I ----- a cup of strong coffee. (have)
- 6. Probably, Anas ------ the conference next week. (not , attend)
- 7. Hani hopes that his brother ----- there on time tonight. (be)
- 8. I think that my uncle ----- us next weekend. (visit)
- 9. Perhaps, Ahmad ------ all his friends to the party next month. (invite)
- 10. I ----- some pizza and cola. (At a restaurant) (take)

### Answers:

1. will rain	2. will come	3. will get	4. will come	5. will have
6. will not attend	7. will be	8. will visit	9. will invite	10. will take

الفصل الأول

- 14 -

### **Future with (going to)**

**Form:** is / am / are + going to + baseform **Functions:** 

**1.** To talk about future plans, intentions and arrangements. It does not have to be for the near future.

للحديث عن الخطط المستقبلية أو النوايا أو الترتيبات، وليس بالضرورة أن تتعلق بالمستقبل القريب

#### 2. To express predictions that are based on evidence.

للتعبير عن التنبؤات المبينة على دليل (ليس مجرد تنبؤ مثل (will)

ثائر النمورة

#### Keywords:

plan, because, evidence (proof), conclude, deduce, intend, arrange, tomorrow, next (week), tonight, today, in the future, forever ... etc.

#### **Exercise:**

- 1. It ----- this afternoon. Look! It's cloudy. (rain)
- 2. I ------ to Canada. This is my own plan. (travel)
- 3. I'm almost sure he -----. He's phoned me. (come)
- 4. I can conclude that the researchers -----with their papers in the symposium.(participate)
- 5. Khalid ------ a high mark because he has prepared very well. (get)
- 6. Sami ------ a long story next week. He has arranged for this. (write)
- 7. To conclude, the modern world ------ many technological problems in the future. (encounter)
- 8. The criminals ------ again to the house in the near future. I have a piece of evidence. (come)
- 9. I ----- Petra during my journey tomorrow. This is my plan. (visit)
- 10. The boy ------ within few minutes. He looks drowsy. (sleep)

#### Answers:

- 1. is going to rain 2. am going to travel 3. is going to come 4. are going to participate
- 5. is going to get 6. is going to write 7. is going to encounter 8. are going to come
- 9. am going to visit 10. is going to sleep

الفصل الاول

### أسئلة وزارية منوعة (سنوات سابقة)

1. While my father ...... a book, our neighbour came to visit us. (is read, reads, was reading, is being read) > 2019 (1)

- 15 -

- 2. According to Kate's schedule, she ..... her business partner next Tuesday.
  (would be met , will be met , was going to meet , is going to meet) ▶ 2019 (1)
- 3. I think humans ..... to Mars in 2070. ► 2019 (2) (will travel , were going to travel , have travelled , had been travelled)
- 4. I was driving to work when the engine ...... working. ► 2019 (2) (stops , were stopping , is stopped , stopped)

### **A MIXED QUESTION (REVISION)**

Correct the verbs between brackets.

- 1. Perhaps, I ..... the conference tomorrow. (attend)
- 2. Mazen and Ahmad ..... well. This is their plan. (study)
- 3. I think that Ali ..... at the airport on time. (arrive)
- 4. The plane ...... at 7 p.m. (arrive)
- 5. Sami ..... recently ..... a good book. (write)
- 6. Mahdi ..... his friend in the stadium yesterday. (meet)
- 7. A. ..... you fine now? (be)
- **B.** Yes, I ..... to the doctor last night. (go)
- 8. Straight roads ...... skillful drivers. (not, produce)
- 9. Eating almonds ..... heart diseases. (reduce)
- 10. English ...... a global language. We should learn it well. (be)
- Answers: \_\_\_\_\_

### احتياطيات ... هاااااااام

أفعال يجب أن تتبع بصيغة الـ "Reference List of Verbs followed by "to infinitive

want, afford, plan, hope, intend, offer, arrange, promise, agree, refuse, decide,

manage, forget, seem, appear, tend, pretend, claim, ask, would like ...etc.

أفعال يجب أن تتبع بصيغة الـ Reference List of Verbs followed by "GERUND" ing

<u>mind</u>, <u>regret</u>, <u>stop (to work / working)</u>, admit, avoid, consider, deny, enjoy, finish, imagine, keep (on), postpone, suggest, ...etc.

- 16 -

ثائر الن<u>مورة</u>

1. I intend ..... my homework. (do)

2. I intend to clean my room.

I am .....

الفصل الأول

### سؤال وزاري شتوية 2017

I want to get a new apartment but I can't afford ..... money at the moment. (borrow)

Q1: Choose the correct form of the verbs below. (WB; p.7)

1. Children often use / are using computers better than their parents.

2. If you will play / play computer games all day, you won't have time to study.

3. I want to get / getting a tablet, but I can't afford to buy / buying one at the moment.

4. Look at the black sky! It's raining / going to rain soon!

5. I'm coming / come from Ajloun, but I'm staying / stay in Irbid for a few months. I will return to Ajloun in the spring.

6. Nadia has **been doing / done** her homework for two hours! She **is / will be** finished very soon.

7. I was writing / wrote an email when my laptop was switching / switched itself off.

#### **Answers:**

1. use2. play3. to get ; to buy4. going to rain5. come; 'm staying6. been doing ; will be7. was writing ; switched

### Q2: Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. (WB; p.7)

In 1943 CE, the chairman of a 'business machines' company (1)...... (say) that the world only (2) ...... (need) two or three computers. He (3)...... (be) wrong! Since then, there (4) ...... (be) a technological revolution. These days, millions of families (5) ...... (have) at least one computer at home, and many people (6) ...... (carry) smartphones and tablets with them everywhere. A few people even (7) ...... (wear) them- either on their wrists, round their necks or on their belts. There's even more: experts say that one day soon we (8) ...... (attach) them to our skin!

- 17 -

Answers: 1. said 2.needed 3. was 4. has been 5. have 6. carry 7. wear 8. will attach





### Passive Voice المبني للمجهول

الجدول الآتي يبين كيفية تغيير صيغة الفعل عند التحويل للمبني للمجهول: (مرتب بطريقة تسهل الحفظ)

No.	Tense	Active	Passive
1		<b><u>1.</u></b> must, had to, will, would,	<u><b>1.</b></u> Modal (must,) + be +
		shall, should, can, could +	V.3
	Modal Verbs	baseform	
		<b>2.</b> must, might,+ have + V.3	<u><b>2.</b></u> must, might, +have +
			been + V.3
2	Present Simple	V.1	is, am, are + V.3
3	Past Simple	V.2	was, were $+$ V.3
4	Present Continuous	is, am, are + V-ing	is, am, are $+$ being $+$ V.3
5	Past Continuous	was, were + V-ing	was, were $+$ being $+$ V.3
6	<b>Present Perfect</b>	has / have + V.3	has / have + been + $V.3$
7	Past Perfect	had + V.3	had $+$ been $+$ V.3

#### **Examples:**

- 1. The boy **must do** the homework. ► Active The homework **must be done** (by the boy). ► **Passive**
- 2. The government **should solve** the problem of unemployment. ► Active The problem of unemployment **should be solved** (by the government). ► Passive
- 3. They might have saved some of the historical sites. ► Active
   Some of the historical sites might have been saved (by them). ► Passive
- 4. My friends **have visited** the library. ► Active The library **has been visited** (by my friends). ► Passive
- 5. The children **are cleaning** the room. ► **Active** The room **is being cleaned** (by the children). ► **Passive**

#### ملحوظات هامة:

تستخدم صيغة المبني للمجهول في حالات عدة منها:
 عندما نريد التركيز على المفعول به أكثر من الفاعل إضافة إلى التركيز على العملية (process).
 عندما نجهل الفاعل، أو لا نريد أن نذكره، أو أنه غير مهم.
 لجعل الجملة أكثر رسمية.
 ما الفصل الأول

```
- 18 -
```

من باب التنويع في الأسلوب، وبشكل عام فإن الإنجليزية تميل لاستخدام المبني للمجهول أكثر من العربية.
 2. في المبني للمعلوم يكون شكل الجملة: O + V + O
 في المبني للمجهول يكون شكلها : ... + V + O
 وبالتالي، فإن الأفعال المتعدية فقط هي التي نستطيع تحويلها للمبني للمجهول؛ لأننا بحاجة للمفعول به لوضعه في بداية الجملة.
 8. جرت العادة الوزارية - حتى على النمط الجديد - أن يكون المفعول به مكون النمويية تميل لاستخدام المبني للمجهول أكثر من العربية.
 9. في المبني المجهول يكون شكلها : ... + V + O
 وبالتالي، فإن الأفعال المتعدية فقط هي التي نستطيع تحويلها للمبني للمجهول؛ لأننا بحاجة للمفعول به لموضعه في بداية الجملة.
 8. جرت العادة الوزارية - حتى على النمط الجديد- أن يكون المفعول به مكتوبا في نص السؤال.
 9. عند التحويل، يرجى الانتباه عند اختيار صيغة الفعل مفرد / جمع بأن الذى قد تسلم السلطات هو .

المفعول به فهو الذي يتحكم، وليس المرحوم (الفاعل).

### **Exercise**

#### Rewrite the following sentences using the passive voice. 1- The candidates must do some practice. Some practice ..... 2- The government must have considered the issue. The issue ..... 3- The specialists should test all vehicles. All vehicles ..... 4- The professor has divided the students into groups. The students..... 5- Nobody had finished the task. The task..... 6- Muna was writing some articles for the newspaper. Some articles..... 7- I will visit my uncle tomorrow. My uncle ..... 8- He has to have enough money to buy that book. Enough money ..... 9- Sana' could drive the car skillfully. The car ..... 10- I may delete your messages from my phone. Your messages..... 11- She gave me some books. Ι..... 12- People should read different types of books. Different types of books ..... 13- Everyone must learn another language. Another language ..... 14- A doctor is going to examine you in the medical centre. You ..... الفصل الأول ثائر النمورة - 19 -

#### **Answers:**

- 1. Some practice must be done (by the candidates).
- 2. The issue must have been considered (by the government).
- 3. All vehicles should be tested (by the specialists).
- 4. The students have been divided into groups (by the professor).
- 5. The task had not been finished (by anybody).
- 6. Some articles were being written for the newspaper (by Muna).
- 7. My uncle will be visited tomorrow (by me).
- 8. Enough money has to be had to buy that book (by him).
- 9. The car could be driven skillfully by Sana'.
- 10. Your messages may be deleted from my phone (by me).
- 11. I was given some books (by her).
- 12. Different types of books should be read (by people).
- 13. Another language must be learnt (by everyone).
- 14. You are going to be examined in the medical centre (by a doctor).

### أسئلة وزارية (سنوات سابقة)

1. People saw smoke coming out of the forest. Smoke	► 2011 (W)
2. The government must save the historical sites.	► 2011 (S)
The historical sites	
	► 2012 (W)
The plants	
6 6	► 2012 (S)
The car	
5. The patient must take the medicine on time.	► 2013 (W)
The medicine	
6. Samer must fill in the job application form.	► 2013 (S)
The job application form by Sar	
7. Everyone must save the natural resources.	► 2014 (W)
The natural resources	
8. Children mustn't leave bicycles in the driveway. Bicycles	► 2014 (S)
9. Different goods among countries <b>can be by</b> traders. (transport)	► 2014 (S)
10. Jordan imports 96 % of its energy from the neighboring Arab countries.	
96 % of Jordan's energy	P 2013 (11)
11. Parents must not give their children everything they want.	► 2015 (W)
Children	
<u>تُائر النمورة</u> - 20 -	

12. According to our teacher's instructions all of our compositions in ink. He won't accept papers written in pencil. (write) 2015 (S)
13. A new vocational school has recently in my area. (build) > 2016 (W)
14. Many Jordanian poems now into English, and people all
over the world are able to read them. (translate) > 2016 (W)
15. My parents have saved enough money to fund our university courses. $\geq 2016$ (S)
Enough money
16. The ruins by thousands of tourists every day. (view) ▶2018 (W)
17. Last month, many students as members in the English club.
(was elected , were elected , are elected) ► 2018 (S)
18. I'm afraid that my laptop by somebody else yesterday. ► 2019 (W)
(was used, are used, will use)
19. Three of my articles last month in the local newspaper. $\geq 2019$ (1)
(have published, has been published, will be published, were published)
20. Many galloons of fresh milk every day. > 2019 (2)
(are drunk , is drinking , drank , are drinking)
21. My parents have saved enough money to buy a new car. ► 2021
A) Enough money has been saved to buy a new car.
B) Enough money hasn't been saved to buy a new car.
C) Enough money had been saved to buy a new car.
D) Enough money hadn't been saved to buy a new car.
ANSWERS:

### **Revision of Tenses & Passive Voice**

#### Q1: Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. (SB; p.7)

People (1) ------ (use) smartphones since they (2) ------ (invent) in the early 2000s. During the early 2000s, people (3) ------ (buy) phones in different colours and different designs. In 2010 CE, the first tablet computer (4) ------ (produce). By the end of 2010 CE, companies (5) ------ (sell) more smartphones than PCs for the first time. Now, about one billion smartphones (6) ------ (sell) around the world each year. In the near future, it (7) ------ (estimate) that over 40% of the population in Jordan will have a smartphone. It is probable that this market (8) ------ (expand) in the future. At the moment, people aged 16-30 (9) ------ (buy) the most smartphones, but experts say there (10) ------ (be) a growth in the number of older people buying smartphones in the future.

#### **Answers:**

1. have been using2. were invented3. bought4. was produced5. had sold6. are sold7. is estimated8. will expand9. are buying10. will be

الفصل الأول

- 21 -

# Reported Speech (غير المباشر)

• Reported (Indirect) speech includes reported **statements** and reported **questions** (whquestions ; Yes / No questions).

- ( ويشمل الكلام المنقول كلا<sup>1</sup> من الجمل الخبرية المنقولة، والأسئلة المنقولة بنو عيها ). - عند التحويل إلى الكلام غير المباشر فإننا **نعود درجة في زمن الفعل إلى الماضي**، بخلاف المبني للمجهول (passive voice) ، حيث نحافظ على زمن الفعل فيه، و هذه النقطة تعد من الأخطاء الشائعة عند الطلبة، لذلك ارتأيت إلى وضع الدرسين متتابعين في هذه الدوسية بخلاف ترتيب الكتاب ليسهل التفريق بينهما.

الجدول الآتي يبين كيفية تغيير زمن الفعل عند التحويل إلى الكلام غير المباشر: (مرتب بطريقة تسهل الحفظ)

No.	Direct Speech	Reported Speech	
1	Present Simple	Past Simple	
	V.1	V.2	
2	Past Simple	Past Perfect	
	V.2	had + V.3	
3	Past Perfect	Past Perfect	
	had $+$ V.3	had + V.3	
4	Present Perfect	Past Perfect	
	has / have + V.3	had + V.3	
5	Present Continuous	Past Continuous	
	is / am / are + V-ing	was / were + V-ing	
6	Past Continuous	Past Perfect Continuous	
	was / were + V-ing	had + been + V-ing	
7	Past Perfect Continuous	Past Perfect Continuous	
	had + been + V-ing	had + been + V-ing	
8	Present Perfect Continuous	ent Perfect Continuous Past Perfect Continuous	
	has / have + been + V-ing	had + been + V-ing	
9	Modals (will, shall, can, may,	would, should, could, might,	
	must + baseform)	had to + baseform	

- 22 -

الفصل الأول

ثائر النمورة

أما الجدول التالى فيبين كيفية تغيير بعض الكلمات عند نقل الكلام (حفظ) :

No.	Direct Speech	Reported Speech	
1	now	then	
2	at this moment	at that moment	
3	today	that day	
4	yesterday	the day before / the previous day	
5	last (week)	the (week) before / the previous (week)	
6	tomorrow	the following day / the day after	
7	next (week)	the following (week)/ the week after	
8	here	there	
9	this	that	
10	these	those	
11	ago	before	
12	tonight	that night	

وأخيرا الجدول الآتي يبين كيفية تحويل الضمائر: (حفظ، أو على المهارات)

Subject	Object	Possessive
$I \rightarrow he / she$	$me \rightarrow him / her$	$my \rightarrow his / her$
you $\rightarrow$ he / she / I / they	you→ him / her / me/ them	your $\rightarrow$ his / her / my
we $\rightarrow$ they	$us \rightarrow them$	our $\rightarrow$ their

### **Reported Statements**

#### **Examples:**

1. "My brothers spend every day of their lives together." (Direct [D]) He **said** (that) **his** brothers **spent** every day of their lives together. (Reported [R])

- 2. "I've lost my bag." (D) She said (that) she had lost her bag. (R)
- 3. "I'll meet my brother here tomorrow." (D)He said he would meet his brother there the following day. (R)

الفصل الأول

- 23 -

#### **Exercise:**

#### **Answers:**

1. He said that he had visited his uncle	the day	before.
--	---------	---------

- 2. He said that they were playing football then.
- 3. He said that he might do an experiment that night.
- 4. He said that he had been repairing his car.
- 5. He told me that he had received a message from an old friend the previous night.
- 6. The accused man denied that he had committed that crime.
- 7. Ali said that the play had started when he arrived.
- 8. Muna told Rasha that she'd already been living in London for five years.

أسئلة الكتاب المدرسى وإجاباتها

#### 

4. "Later we will give you, our dear listeners, information about websites where you can find more advice on Internet safety."

He said that -----

الفصل الأول

#### Answers:

1. He said that many computers had filters which stopped people seeing certain websites.

2. He said that if they shared information on social media with their friends, it might be accessed by other people, too.

3. He said that on social media, they should only connect to people they know well.4. He said that later they would give the listeners information about websites where they could find more advice on Internet safety.

## Q2: Report what these people are saying. Pay attention to the time phrases. (SB; p.11)

**Farida:** Our teacher told us about the dangers of the Internet yesterday. I have to write an essay about it tonight. I think I'm going to need some help.

**Saleem:** We have to give a talk about the advantages and disadvantages of the Internet next week, so I'll need to prepare it this week.

#### **ANSWERS:**

**1. Farida said that** their teacher had told them about the dangers of the Internet the day before. She said that she had to write an essay about it that night. She thought she was going to need some help.

**2. Saleem said that** they had to give a talk about the advantages and disadvantages of the Internet the week after, so he would need to prepare it that week.

#### **Initial Test (Activity Book, p.4)**

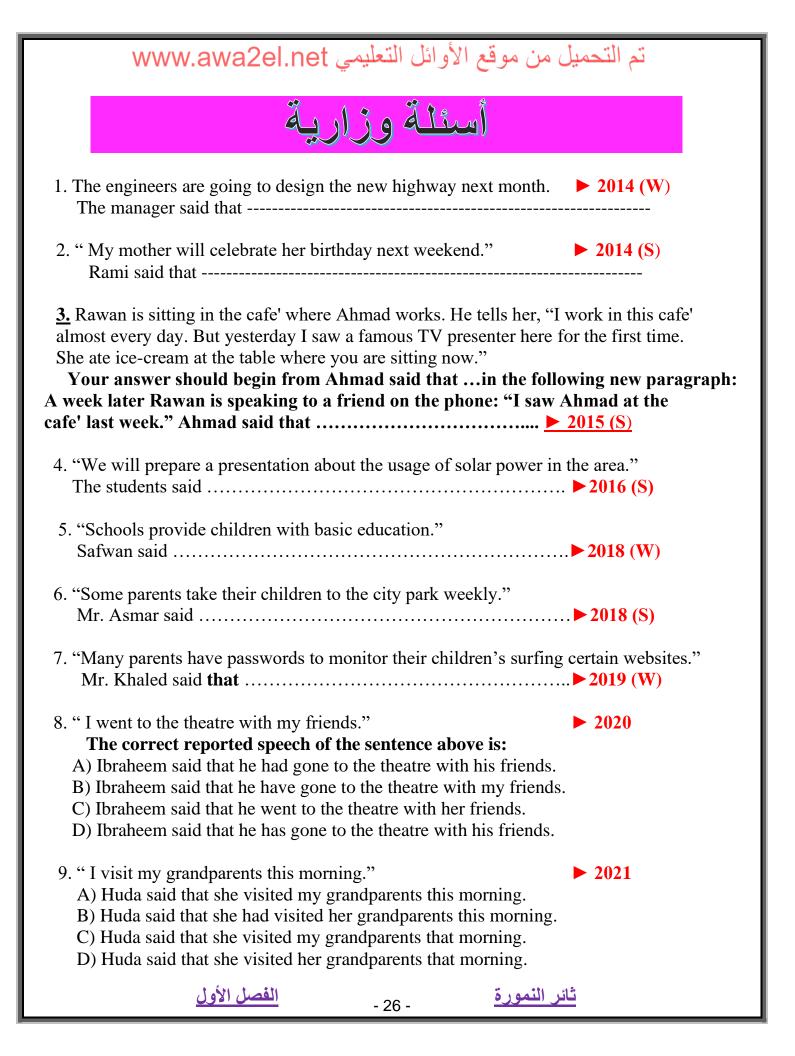
#### Q3: Report the following statements.

1. "I have some questions for you, Muna."	
Nour told Muna	
2. "I've lived in Amman for six years."	
Sami said	
3. "Yesterday I bought all the ingredients for a chocolate cake."	
Huda told me	
4. "I really enjoyed the book that I finished this morning."	
Tareq said	
5. "My favourite subject this year is Chemistry."	
Hussein told me	

#### **Answers:**

- 1. that she had some questions for her
- 2. that he had lived in Amman for six years
- 3. that she had bought all the ingredients for a chocolate cake the day before
- 4. that he had really enjoyed the book that he had finished that morning
- 5. that his favourite subject that year was Chemistry

الفصل الأول



### ANSWERS

The manager said that the engineers were going to design the new highway the month after.
 Rami said that his mother would celebrate her birthday the weekend after.

3. Ahmad said that he worked in that café almost every day. He said that but **he** had seen a famous TV presenter there for the first time the day before. She

had eaten ice-cream at the table where  $\underline{\mathbf{I}}$  was sitting then.

4. The students said (that) they would prepare a presentation about the usage of solar power in the area.

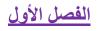
5. Safwan said that schools provided children with basic education.

6	
7	
8	
9	

"It's better to have a reported speech than a passive voice."

- 27 -

Tha'er Al-Nammoura



التموره

### **Causative Verbs (Having things done)**

**FORM:** has / have / had ... + object (O) + (V.3)

الاستخدام (Use) : نستخدم هذه الصيغة عندما يقوم شخص ما بعمل شيء ما نيابة عن شخص آخر بناء على طلب أو ترتيب ... ، ويحمل معنى المبني للمجهول (passive voice)، ولكن بصيغة مختلفة.

#### **Examples:**

- 1. I <u>fixed</u> my car. (Active)
- 2. I had my car fixed. (Causative)
- My car <u>was fixed</u>. (Passive)

الجملة (1) تعني أنني قمت بإصلاح سيارتي بنفسي، أما الجملة الثانية فقد قام شخص آخر بإصلاح سيارتي.

- 3. Sami <u>is painting</u> the house. (Active)
- 4. Sami is having the house painted. (Causative)
- The house is being painted. (Passive)
  الجملة (3) تعنى أن سامياً يدهن بيته بنفسه، أما الجملة (4) فتعنى أن شخصا آخر يقوم بهذا الأمر

No.	Tenses	<b>Regular Active Forms</b>	<b>Causative Forms</b>
1	Present Simple	V.1	has / have + O + V.3
2	Past Simple	V.2	had + O + V.3
3	Present Continuous	is / am / are + V- ing	is / am / are+ having+
			O +V.3
4	Past Continuous	was / were $+ V - ing$	was / were + having+
			<b>O</b> + <b>V</b> .3
5	<b>Present Perfect</b>	has / have + <b>V.3</b>	has / have had + O + V.3
6	Past Perfect	had + V.3	had had + <b>O</b> + <b>V</b> .3
7	Present Perfect Cont.	has / have +been+ V-ing	has / have + been +
			having $+ O + V.3$
8	Past Perfect Cont.	had + been + V-ing	had + been +
			having $+ O + V.3$
9	Modals	will, can, might,+ base	will, can, might, +
			have + O +V.3

"Straight roads do not make skillful drivers." الطرق المستقيمة لا تصنع سائقين ماهرين.

الفصل الأول

- 28 -

## **Practice:**

- 1. Amal didn't buy her own car. She had it -----. (buy)
- 2. Ahmad isn't writing the report. He is having it -----. (write)
- 3. Manal hasn't cleaned her room. She has had it -----. (clean)
- 4. I'll ask someone to repair my tablet. I will have my tablet -----. (repair)
- 5. Sami didn't wash the dishes himself. He had them -----. (wash)
- 6. Yunis didn't type the recommendation letter himself. He had it -----. (type)
- 7. Salma hadn't been doing the task herself. She had been having the task ------. (do)
- 8. Maher didn't close the door. He had it -----. (close)
- 9. The tourists didn't buy the vases themselves. They had them -----. (buy)
- 10. The parents didn't raise their son. They had him -----. (raise)

# Answers:

1. bought 2. written 3. cleaned 4. repaired 5. washed 6. typed 7. done 8. closed 9. bought 10. raised

# Q: Write follow-up sentences using the causative verbs in brackets.

1. I didn't repair the car myself. I had it (repair)	
2. My mother dyed her own dress blue. She didn't have it	(dye)
3. She didn't make the dress herself. She had it	(make)
4. He isn't going to take his own photo. He's going to have it	(take)
5. My brother cut his own hair. He didn't have it	(cut)
6. My neighbour painted his own house. He didn't have it	(paint)
7. My father doesn't clean his car himself. He has it	(clean)
8. We didn't cut down trees in our garden ourselves. We had them	(cut down)

Answers: ....

# أسئلة وزارية

1. I had my phone after 1	[ dropped it. ► 2019 (1)
(repaired , had repaired , repair , rep	airing)
2. I had my new apartment be	fore my birthday party.
(had decorated, decorating, decorat	ed , decorates) > 2019 (2)
3. I asked someone to send my text messag	e. ► 2020
The correct causative form of the sent	ence above is:
A) I have sent my message.	B) I had my text message sent.
C) My text message was sent.	D) I had sent my text message.
4. Ibrahim his new dental clinic	last week. > 2021
A) has / furnished B) had / furnished	C) is / furnished D) was / furnished
الفصل الأول	<u>ثائر النمورة</u> - 29 -

# **CONDITIONALS (If Clauses)**

• ZERO Conditional (If Clause – Type ZERO)

<u>Form:</u> If + S + V.1 + comp., S + V.1 + comp. (.) <u>Usage:</u> To describe something that always happens (the inevitable consequence) after a certain action or event.

ويستخدم هذا النوع مع الحقائق والثوابت والعواقب الحتمية .

#### **Examples:**

- 1. If you visit the library, you find useful books there.
- 2. If people **respect** the country laws, you **don't see** these problems.
- 3. If plants **don't get** enough sunlight, they **die**.
- 4. Water turns to ice if the temperature falls below zero.

#### • FIRST Conditional

**<u>Form:</u>** If + S + V.1 + ..., S + will + baseform + ... (.)

Usage: To describe a future outcome of a certain future action or event.

ويستخدم للحديث عن نتيجة محددة لحدث أو أمر مستقبلي محدد.

#### **Examples:**

1. If you **get** an interview for a job in Microsoft, you **will need** to show real enthusiasm for electronics.

2. If you **study** hard for the English Exam next week, you'll get a high mark.

#### • SECOND Conditional

<u>Form</u>: If + S + V.2 + comp., S + would + baseform + complement. <u>Usage:</u> To express imaginary situations at present

للحديث عن الحالات غير الواقعية والخيالية في الوقت الحأضر.

#### **Examples:**

- 1. If I saw Ali in the mall, I would give him the money.
- 2. If I were you, I'd forgive him.

#### • THIRD Conditional

<u>Form</u>: If + S + (had + V.3) + comp., S + would + have + V.3 + comp. (.) <u>Usage</u>: to imagine past situations. These past situations are impossible, and did not happen at all.

ويستخدم النوع الثالث لتخيّل حالات في الماضي (مستحيلة الحدوث) .

ثائر النمورة

#### **Examples:**

- 1. If I had stayed at home that day, I would have missed the celebration.
- 2. If I'd studied harder, I'd have passed the exam.

الفصل الأول

# (Mix plus ) Practice

Q1: Fill in the gaps with the most suitable form of the verb in bracket. 1- If I ..... (be) in your shoes, I'd forgive him. 2- You will get a gift if you ..... (come) early. 3- Unless she ..... (finish) her assignment, she wouldn't have gone shopping. 4- If we ...... (heat) ice, it ...... (melt). 5- If I didn't punish him, he ..... (not / do) his homework. 6- My father ...... (buy) me a bike if I get a high mark in the English exam. 9- Unless Salma had told her mother the truth, she ...... (punish) her harshly. 10- The car would be cleaner if you ...... (wash) it. 11- I'd buy that car if I ...... (have) enough money. 12- Unless you ...... (sell) your car, you wouldn't have bought that house. 14- If I ..... (be) you, I'd leave the country. 15- She will get a prize if she ..... (take part) in the contest. 16- If he came to the library, he ..... (find) the answers to the questions. 19- If you ..... (study) hard, you'll pass your final exams this year. 20- You..... (fire) from the company if you don't behave yourself. Answers 1. were 2. come 3. had finished 4. heat / melts 5. wouldn't do 6. will buy 7. plan 8. is 9. would have punished 10. washed 11. had 12. had sold 13. boils 14. were 15. takes part 16. would find 17. would have carried

20. will be fired

19. study الفصل الأول

18. would / do

- 31 -

تائر النمورة

Q2: Rewrite the following sentences keeping the same meaning.

- 1- If we don't call Basma, she won't attend the conference. Unless
- 2- Unless Ali did it, no one would do it.

Unless .....

## Answers

- 1. Unless we call Basma, she won't attend the conference.
- 2. If Ali didn't do it, no one would do it.
- 3. Unless he had taken her to the hospital, she would have been worse.

# QUIZ

1- Unless I learnt French, I (couldn't, can't,	
2- If he hadn't eaten too much, he (wouldn't	t get, wouldn't have got,
won't get ) sick.	
3- If I find a solution to your problem, I (t	
4- I'd repair my car if I (find , had for	und , found) a mechanic.
5 ( If , Unless ) you had advis	sed me, I would have lost
everything. So, thank you indeed!	
6- If you don't understand conditionals, you	(wouldn't / won't /
couldn't) pass this quiz.	
7- She would have failed (if / unless	) her teacher had motivated her.
8- If I ( have, had, had had) enough time, 1	-
أسئلة وزاربة	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
1. If a city everything and doesn't throw anythir	ng away, it is zero waste.
(recycle) ► 2016 (S)	
2. The bus is late. If it soon, we will get a t	axi. ( <b>not, arrive</b> ) ► 2017 (W)
3. I think you should check the spelling of the new learnt w	ords in the dictionary.
If I	-
4. I think I should see a doctor.	► 2018 (S)
If I	
5. If one presses that button, the picture	
(moved , moves , would move)	► 2019 (W)
6. I think you should look for a job in foreign countries.	► 2019 (W)
If I were you	
7. Rasha her friend's dictionary if she had her o	
A) borrowed B) will borrow C) wouldn't borrow	•
A j bontowed b) win bontow C) wouldn't bontow	
- 32 -	<u>ثائر النمورة</u>

# **Modal Verbs**

- must / mustn't : to express obligation للتعبير عن الإجبار والإلزام التعبير عن الم
- have to / don't have to: to express necessity للتعبير عن الضرورة الضرورة المنافرين
- should / shouldn't: to express advisability المتعبير عن النصح
- might : to express probability للتعبير عن الاحتمالية

### **Examples:**

- 1. You **must follow** this compulsory (obligatory) road.
- 2. You don't have to memorize all these names. We have a list of them. (not necessary)
- 3. You should read newspapers and magazines. This is my advice for you.
- 4. You mustn't break the laws of your country. Otherwise, you'll be punished strictly.

## **Q:** Rewrite the sentences with the words in brackets. (WB; p.7) – Revision (MIX)

1. Perhaps Issa's phone is broken. (might) Issa's phone ..... 2. Somebody has found my missing laptop. (been) My ..... 3. I asked someone to fix my computer. (had) Ι..... 4. It isn't necessary to switch off the screen. (have) You ..... 5. You are not allowed to touch this machine. (must) You ..... 6. I think you should send a text message. (would) If ..... 7. Press that button to make the picture move. (moves) If you ..... 8. Mohammad checked his emails, and then he started work. (before) Mohammad had .....

# **Answers**

- 1. Issa's phone might be broken.
- 2. My missing laptop has been found.
- 3. I had my computer fixed.
- 4. You don't have to switch off the screen.
- 5. You mustn't touch this machine.
- 6. If I were you, I would send a text message.
- 7. If you press that button, the picture moves.
- 8. Mohammad had checked his emails before he started work.



التمورة

Modals for Speculation / PAST sure (+) => must + ... sure  $\bigcirc \Rightarrow$  cant + ... Unsure A might + ---1 - The rain was heavy. He \_\_\_\_ have been wet. 2- I'm sure he didn't buy a dictionary. He \_\_\_\_ have brought it to the classroom. 3- I'm unsure whether I've told him about the appointment or not. He \_\_\_\_ have come to the hall. الفصل الأول <u>ثائر النمورة</u> - 34 -

# Module 2

used to / be used to **Unit 2** 

# (be) used to - PAST

**Form:** used to + baseform (infinitive) / did not use to **Did** + **S** + **use to** + .....?

> was / were (not) + used to + v-ing / a noun / a pronoun Was / Were + S + used to + v-ing / a noun / a pronoun ?

Function: We use this structure to describe PAST HABITS OR PAST STATES that have now changed.

ويستخدم هذا التركيب اللغوى لوصف عادات وحالات في الماضي، ولكنها قد تغيرت الآن

## **Examples:**

- 1. My brother **used to buy** my clothes, but now I choose my own.
- 2. Sami **used to be** an engineer, but now he's retired.
- 3. I used to like cartoon films when I was younger. These days I prefer action films.
- 4. Muna **used to go** to the library when she was a student, but now she doesn't go there.
- 5. Khalid was **used to travelling** every year in the past, but now he stays in the country.

# be used to - PRESENT

**Form:** be (is, am, are) + used to + (noun, pronoun, or verb in the gerund form – ing)

**Function:** We use this structure to describe things that are familiar or customary in the present.

نستخدم هذه الصيغة اللغوية لوصف أشياء مألوفة لنا واعتيادية في الوقت الحاضر وليس في الماضي .

# **Examples:**

- 1. We have lived in the city a long time, so we are used to the traffic.
- 2. I didn't like getting up early, but I'm used to it now.
- 3. She has lived in the UK for a year. She is used to speaking English now.
- 4. Ahmad has been living in the countryside for five years now, so he is used to the beauty of nature.

5. I didn't clean my room when I was a young man, but I'm used to it now.

Keywords : normal, habit, custom, accustomed, familiar, common, usually, but now, (in the past ... the matter changes), ordinary. when I was (vounger).

الفصل الأول

- 35 -

ثائر ا<u>لنمورة</u>

## PRACTICE (QUIZ)

- 1. Manar hasn't dealt with foreigners, but now she ----- with them. (be, use to /deal)
- 2. In the past, Mazen ------ magazines and newspapers, but now he does this.

## (not / use to / read)

- 3. My friend ------ me every day in the past, but now the matter changes. (use to / phone)
- 4. Mahdi has experienced this task, so he ----- it properly. (be, use to / do)

5. Our father ------ advice when we were younger, but now he's satisfied with our attitudes and behaviours. (**use to / give**)

Answers: .....

## Q1: Choose the correct option in each sentence. (SB; p. 15) - QUIZ

1. I didn't use to / am used to understand English, but now I do.

2. My cousin has lived in Lebanon for a year. He says he **is used to / didn't use to** living there now.

3. My family and I **are used to / used to** go camping once a month, but we stopped doing that when we moved to the city.

4. Joining a gym can be very tiring at first if you **used to** / **aren't used to** doing much exercise.

5. When I was young, I **used to / am used to** go fishing with my dad every weekend. Now I don't, unfortunately!

Answers: .....

# Q2: Complete the sentences with the correct form of the phrases in the box. Two phrases are needed twice. (WB; p.11)

be used to , not be used to , used to , use to

- **1.** We needed warm clothes when we went to London. We ..... the cold weather.
- 2. My grandparents didn't ..... send emails when they were my age.
- **3.** Rashed ...... go swimming every morning, but now he doesn't.
- 4. We always go to the market across the street, so we ..... eating fresh vegetables.

5. Please slow down. I ..... walking so fast!

6. When you were younger, did you ..... play in the park?

Answers: 1. weren't used to 2. use to 3. used to 4. are used to 5. 'm not used to 6. use to

الفصل الأول

- 36 -

ثائر النمورة

## Q3: Choose the correct form of the verbs below. (WB; Q4; p.11)

1. I **used to / am used to** go shopping in the local supermarket, but it closed two years ago, so now I have to drive into town to shop.

2. There **didn't use to** / **wasn't used to** be so much pollution, but these days it is a global problem.

3. I think television **used to / is used to** be better than it is now. Most of the programmes these days are just reality TV.

4. Most Jordanians are used to / used to the hot weather that we have in summer.

5. There **was used to / used to** be a lot more wild animals in the past, but they are becoming rare nowadays.

6. Salma has been practicing the oud really hard and she **is now used to / now used to** playing it.

Answers: 1. used to 2. didn't use to 3. used to 4. are used to 5. used to 6. is now used to

## Q4: Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. (WB; p.12)

1. When I was a student, I ------ (use to, work) very hard. I ------

(**use to, get up**) very early and study alone before my lectures, attend , and - then come home to study some more!

2. Are you ------ (use to, live) in Jordan yet? You've only been here for two months.

3. When I was a child, my grandmother ----- (**use to, make**) cakes for us all the time, and I liked helping her a lot.

4. My grandfather retired a month ago. He isn't -----(**use to, have**) nothing to do all day. He says he needs a project to concentrate on.

5. I just got glasses this week, and I'm not ----- (use to, wear) them

yet, so I'm still having difficulty.

## Answers:

1. used to work ; used to get up 2. used to living 3. used to make

4. used to having

5. used to wearing

# أسئلة وزارية

- 37 -

1. It is normal for my friend now to send emails. ► 2016 (W) My friend is .....

2. Zaid's friends <u>are used to</u> go fishing once a month, but they stopped doing that when they moved to <u>a</u> city of Irbid.  $\geq$  2016 (S)



<u>نائر التمورة</u>

<ul> <li>3. It is not normal for American people to eat steak for lunch and dinner every day. It is too expensive. ► 2017 (W)</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>4. It is normal for my younger brother to use his electronic dictionary. ► 2018 (W) My younger brother</li> </ul>
5. When I was young, I on foot to my school. ► 2018 (S) (are used to going , used to go , use to go , am used to going)
<ul> <li>6. It is normal for my children now to eat fresh vegetables. ▶ 2019 (W)</li> <li>My children</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Rashed swimming every morning, but now he doesn't. ▶ 2019 (W) (are used to going , used to go , use to go , am used to going)</li> </ul>
8. Ali the duck in the park with his father when he was young. ► 2019 (1) (is used to feeding , used to feed , am used to feeding , are used to feeding)
<ul> <li>9. My friend has lived in Egypt for a year. She says she living there now. (is used to , used to , didn't use to , am not used to) ▶ 2019 (2)</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>10. I am used to teaching my students through social media. ► 2020</li> <li>The sentence that has a similar meaning to the one above is: <ul> <li>A) It had been normal for me to teach my students through social media.</li> <li>B) It was normal for me to teaching my students through social media.</li> <li>C) It is normal for me now to teach my students through social media.</li> <li>D) It isn't normal for me now to teach my students through social media.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<ul> <li>11. It is normal for most of Jordanian people to cook Mansaf in the wedding party.</li> <li>Most of Jordanian people</li></ul>
12. Where did Mahato school?2021A) used to goB) use goingC) use to goD) use to going
<u>ثائر النمورة</u> - 38 - <u>الفصل الأول</u>

Past Perfect Continuous الماضي التام المستمر

#### Form:

(+): had + been + verb - ing
(-): had not + been + verb - ing
(?): had + S + been + verb - ing ?
(? / -): had not + S + been + verb - ing?

## **Function:**

We use this structure to talk about actions or situations that were happening up to a specific moment in the past.

نستخدم هذا الزمن للحديث عن أفعال أو حالات كانت تحدث ومستمرة حتى لحظةً (وقت) معين ومحدد في الماضي. ويكون التركيز على العملية والاستمرارية عند استخدام الماضي التام المستمر.

### **Examples**:

1. Ahmad was absolutely exhausted because he <u>had been working</u> all night. (be, work)

2. The professors <u>had been discussing</u> the topic before the student came. (be, discuss)

3. After the students <u>had been doing</u> an experiment, they left. (be, do)

4. Ali had been thinking about his friend when he received a text from him. (be, think)

**5.** By the time the bus arrived, we <u>had been waiting</u> for an hour. (be, wait) <u>Keywords:</u>

Before , after , (because) , by, when, since, (for), (all) ...etc. , (be, V) / (not, be, V) Exercise:

1. The ground was wet because it had ----- all night. (be, rain)

2. Maher felt tired after he ------ a project all day. (be, do)

3. Ahmad was upset because he had------ in the contest. (not , be, participate)

4. The baby's eyes were red because he had ----- for 2 hours. (be, cry)

5. Sami had ----- his car before his father sent him a message. (be, fix)

6. What had you ----- before you played football? (be, read)

7. After Mazen ----- the article, he slept. (be, write)

8. Amjad got nervous because he ----- all morning. (not, be, study)

9. The students had ------ for the competition before the principal came. (be, prepare)

10. My brother heard the bad news because he had ------ . (not, be, sleep)



ثائر النمورة

#### **Answers:**

5. been fixing

- 1. been raining 2. had been doing 3. not been participating 4. been crying
  - 3. not been participating4. been cry7. had been writing8. had not

ثائر النمورة

8. had not been studying

9. been preparing 10. not been sleeping

6. been reading

# QUIZ

## Q: Fill in the gaps with the past perfect *simple* or *continuous* of the verbs in brackets:

- 1. Ahmad got happy because he ----- never ----- the first prize before. (get)
- 2. The teacher ------ the exam sheets before he got in the class. (be, mark)
- 3. Muna moved to Amman after she had ----- in Zarqa for 10 years. (be, live)
- 4. Samer answered the question after he ----- the lesson. (understand)
- 5. Ayman had ----- online games all day. (be, play)

الفصل الأول

### Answers: .....

# أسئلة سنوات سابقة

1. When Mr. Mahmoud arrived, he was exhausted. He for five days.
(be, climb) ► 2011 (W)
2. The tailors finished making Laila's dress a week before the wedding. They
it for over a month. (be, make) > 2011 (S)
3. Aisha received an email from Tahani yesterday, she to write since
June. (be, promise) > 2012 (W)
<u>4.</u> Omar passed all his exams. He had for a month. (be, revise) <b>2012</b> (S)
5. Ahmad was very tired at the end of the day. He had for over five hours.
(be, work) > 2013 (W)
6. The climber had the mountain for over two hours. (be, climb) > 2013 (S)
7. We had with each other for a long time. (be, communicate) $\ge$ 2014 (W)
8. Susan had about the idea for a while when she made the suggestion.
(be, think) > 2015 (W)
9. By the time we arrived, they had for an hour. (be, talk) $\geq$ 2016 (S)

- 40 -

10. Ali had ------ about his friend when he received an email from him.

(be, think) ► 2018 (W)

► 2018 (S)

11. The children ------ in the yard for two hours.

(has been playing , is playing , had been playing)

12. My uncle ------ working at the company for five years when he got

# promotion. ► 2019(1)

(is , have been , had been , will be)

- 13. My mother was very tired; she ..... all afternoon for a special family dinner.
  A) is cooking B) has been cooking C) cooks D) had been cooking ► 2020
- 14. My sister was very busy yesterday as she ..... for a special occasion. ► 2021
  A) had been preparing B) prepares C) has been prepared D) is preparing

## **ANSWERS:**

- 1. had been climbing 2. had been making 3. had been promising
- 4. been revising5. been working6. been climbing
- 7. been communicating 8. been thinking 9. been talking 10. been thinking
- 11. had been playing 12. had been 13. D 14. A

# Q1: Complete the sentences, using the <u>past perfect continuous</u> form of the verbs in brackets. (SB; p.19)

- 1. A: When I saw you yesterday, you looked really tired.
- **B:** Yes, I ----- for half an hour. (**run**)

2. My mother lost her purse yesterday. She ----- in the market; she must have put it down somewhere and left it there. (shop)

3. I made my mother a cup of tea. She was tired; she ------ all afternoon for a special family dinner. (cook)

Answers: 1. had been running 2. had been shopping 3. had been cooking



### Q2: Complete the sentences by choosing the correct verb forms. (SB; p.19)

Hind (1) has / had been working very hard for several weeks before she did her final exams. When the results were published, she was delighted to learn that she (2) has / had passed. She (3) has / had done extremely well. She (4) phoned / had phoned her parents from the college. They (5) were / had been waiting for her call all morning. When she arrived home an hour later, there was a surprise for her. For several weeks, her parents (6) planned / had been planning a special weekend away to the Jerash Festival. They (7) have / had managed to make it a surprise for Hind, even though they (8) were / had been using the family computer to make all the arrangements! Hind was delighted. She (9) has / had been talking about the Jerash Festival for months; and now the whole family was going! It was a wonderful graduation present.

#### Answers:

1. had	2. had	3. had	4. phoned	5. had been
6. had be	en planning	7. had	8. had been	9. had been

الفصل الأول

تائر النمورة



# DERIVATION (1) - الجدول الأول

# لحل سؤال الاشتقاق على النمط الجديد لا بد من حفظ الجداول الثلاثة الموزعة على الدوسية + اشتقاقات المعاني GLOSSARY + الـ RULES

verb	noun	adjective	adverb	Meaning
Х	medicine طب ، دواء	medical طبي	medically	الطب
discover	discovery (اکتشاف) مکتشِف discoverer	مكتشّف discovered اكتشافي discovering قابل للاكتشاف discoverable	Х	يكتشف
prescribe	prescription (وصفة طبية) prescriber (واصف طبي)	prescribed (موصوف طبيا) prescribing (وصفي)	Х	يكتب وصفة دواء
infect	infection عدوی	مُعدي infectious مصاب بالعدوى infected	infectiously	يُعدي
diagnose	diagnosis	نشخیصىي diagnostic مشخَّص diagnosed قابل للتشخیص diagnosable	diagnostically	يشخص المرض 
intend	intention	intended / intentional	intentionally	ينوي
Х	جرّاح surgeon جراحة، عيادة surgery	surgical	surgically	جرّاح / جراحة 
believe	اعتقاد belief مصدِّق believer	مصدَّق believed قابل للتصديق believable	believably	يعتقد
succeed	success	successful	successfully	ينجح
conclude	conclusion	conclusive	conclusively	يستنتج
operate	operation	جاهز للاستعمال operational مشغَّل operated تشغيلي operating	operationally	ينجح يستنتج يشغل، يجري عملية
expect	expectation (life) expectancy	متوقع expected قابل للتوقع expectable	expectedly	يتوقع
	الفصل الأول	رة - 43 -	ثائر النمو	

الجدول الآتي يبين نهايات أقسام الكلام، مع إعطاء مثال مشهور (شائع) لكل منها:

	Endings (suf	fixes)	
Noun	Adjective	Verb	Adverb
tion: dictation	ful: beautiful	ise /ize: organise	ly: successfully
sion: revision	less: careless	ate: locate	
ment: improvement	y: stormy	<b>en</b> : wid <b>en</b>	
ance: attendance	ly: friendly	<b>ify</b> : class <b>ify</b>	
ence: occurrence	ive: comprehensive	ed: stopped (V.2)	
cy: fluency	ing: interesting		
i <b>ty:</b> electric <b>ity</b>	ed: interested		
<b>ism</b> : tour <b>ism</b>	<b>al</b> : annu <b>al</b>		
dom: wisdom	ous: serious		
ship: friendship	ic: economic		
ure: pressure	ant: important		
ness: easiness	ent:efficient		
<b>ing</b> : writ <b>ing</b>	ish: childish		
al: arrival	like: childlike		
th: strength	<b>ory</b> : obligat <b>ory</b>		
age: shortage	able: printable		
Nouns for People	ible: flexible		
ist: scientist	<b>ary</b> : prim <b>ary</b>		
er: teacher	ate: fortunate		
<b>or</b> : visit <b>or</b>			
<b>ian</b> : music <b>ian</b>			
ee: employee			
ant: assistant			
ent: student			
<b>ate</b> : candid <b>ate</b>			

الفصل الأول

ثائر النمورة

- 44 -

# 1. The Noun

مواقع الاسم: ■ يقع الاسم فاعلاً للجملة:

<u>Chaos</u> is unacceptable in all cases.

\* Rule : <u>S</u> + V + O

■ يقع الاسم مفعولاً به:

We all should fight **violence**.

\* Rule : S + V + <u>O</u>

یستخدم بعد الصفة:

Criminals should be punished harshly by strict <u>laws</u>.

## \* Rule: adj. + <u>n</u> /// adj. + (and / or) adj. + <u>n</u>

∎ يستخدم بعد حروف الجر (from, of, in, on, with, without, at, (to), into, for ). Our country has been turning from <u>development</u> to <u>development</u>.

## \* Rule : prep. + n

■ يستخدم بعد أداة التعريف (the)، وأداتي التنكير (a / an): Migrants help with the <u>development</u> of the Gulf countries.

# \* Rule : the , a , an + n the + n + of

<u>\* ملحوظة:</u> إذا فصل بين الأداة والاسم فراغ، فإننا نضع صفة (.adj) في الفراغ. The **great** <u>economy</u> of China is noticed.

## \* Rule : the , a , an + <u>adj</u> + n

∎ يستخدم بعد أسماء الإشارة (this, that, these, those):

No one accepts this *chaos*.

# \* Rule : this, that , ... + n

- 45 -

الفصل الاول

■ يستخدم الاسم كذلك بعد ضمائر الملكية ((my, his, her, your, its, their, our, ('s / s')):
The criminal's guilt should be proved before any legal action.

## \* Rule : 's , my , his ,... + n

بعد المحددات والمشددات

(several, many, much, any, few, little, some, no, enough, another, other, one, all, :(every, each,

The man has suffered from many *infections*.

## \* Rule : many, no , another , ... + n

■ في الاسم المركب (بعد اسم آخر):

The rainforest **<u>destruction</u>** is ascribed to many reasons.

\* Rule : n + n = a compound noun

∎ بعد .... like , such as , as .... ∎

Anas works as a **surgeon**.

\* Rule : like , such as , as, ... + n

## 2. The Adjective

مواقع الصفة: ■ تأتى الصفة قبل الاسم:

The criminal's guilt should be proved before any **legal** action.

## \* Rule : <u>adj</u> + n

∎ تستخدم الصفة بعد الأفعال الآتية: sound, seem, look, appear, become, get, taste, smell, feel, was / were found)

The boy became **violent** after he had watched that movie.

## \* Rule : become, feel , was/ were found ,... + adj

∎ تستخدم الصفة بعد فعل الـ (to be) عندما يكون فعلاً رئيسياً: The storm was terribly <u>disastrous</u> last night.

- 46 -

# \* Rule : be (main verb)+ (ly) + adj

الفصل الأول

ثائر النمورة

# 3. The Verb

### مواقع الفعل:

يستخدم الفعل المجرد (baseform) بعد (to) شريطة أن يكون الحرف بمعنى (لكي) أو (أن) ، وليس بمعنى (إلى):

Online criminals try to <u>destroy</u> their victims' computers.

# \* Rule : (not) to + BASEFORM (INFINITIVE)

■ يستخدم الفعل المجرّد بعد الأفعال الشكلية (modals):

(must, may, might, will, would, shall, should, can, could,...etc)

Everyone must <u>act</u> well in hard circumstances.

# \* Rule : MODALS + BASEFORM (INFINITIVE)

∎ يستخدم الفعل المجرد بعد الأفعال المساعدة (do, does, did): This disease doesn't infect others. Don't be afraid !

# \* Rule : do / does / did (not) + BASEFORM (INFINITIVE)

■ لا تقوم الجملة إلا بفعل بعد الفاعل:

These viruses **<u>threaten</u>** our operating systems miserably.

## \* Rule : S + <u>V</u> + O

يستخدم الفعل المجرد كفعل أمر في بداية الجملة:

**Develop** your language!

# 4. The Adverb

مواقع الظرف (الحال):

ثائر النمورة

**Economically**, we should use public transport.

∎ قبل الصفة:

This website is **<u>legally</u>** distinguished.

\* Rule : be (is,...) - <u>ly</u> + adj

الفصل الأول

- 47 -

يستخدم الحال قبل الفعل المتعدي في الجملة مباشرة:

Sami <u>violently</u> hit the man.

### \* Rule : - ly + transitive verb + O

بعد الفعل اللازم مباشرة:

The boy was behaving **<u>violently</u>**.

#### \* Rule : intransitive verb + - ly

بعد المفعول به إذا كان الفعل متعدياً (ونختم الجملة به):

Khaled has done the task **<u>chaotically</u>**.

## \* Rule : S + V + O + ly

بين أجزاء الفعل:

It can be **<u>skillfully</u>** done without consulting a specialist.

## \* Rule : helping verb + ly + main verb

Q1: Choose the suitable item from those given to complete each of the following sentences.

1. The results of the last research paper were out of ------.

(expect, expectation, expectedly, expected)

2. Many people die because of ----- diseases every year.

(infectious , infected , infection , infectiously)

3. I'm going to help my friend. This is my own -----.

(intend, intended, intention, intentionally)

- 4. As a patient, you should take all of your ----- on time. (medicines, medically, medical, medicine)
- 5. Physicians should ----- patients accurately.(diagnostically, diagnosis, diagnosable, diagnose)

الفصل الأول

- 48 -

نائر النمورة

- 6. In the past, there were many false -----. They cannot be found nowadays.(believe, beliefs, believable, believed)
- 7. It is a good idea to read more and more to draw interesting -----. (conclude , conclusive , concluded , conclusions)
- 8. Christopher Columbus is a well-known ------. (discover, discovery, discoverer, discoverable)
- 9. The doctor is preparing the ----- for the patient at the moment.

(prescription, prescribe, prescribed, prescriptive)

10. The ----- of the Gulf countries is ascribed to many reasons.

(successful, succeed, successfully, success)

- 11. I can ------ that Ali is not the real criminal, can't I? (conclude, conclusion, conclusive, conclusively)
- 12. ----- , the treatment of cancer is not impossible.

(Medical , Medicine , Medically , Medicate )

13. The man has become ------ . He is really a hardworking person.

(success , successfully , succeed , successful)

14. There is a difference between the word ' ------' and the word 'invention' in the language.

(discover , discovery , discoverable)

(conclusion, conclusive, conclude, conclusively)

الفصل الاول

\*\*\*\*\*

believe , infectious , expectation

- 49 -

ثائر الت<u>موره</u>

- 1. Some diseases may ------ you, so be careful when you deal with patients.
- 2. You should tell others ------ stories. Otherwise, you aren't wise!

# Q2: Read the text and complete it using the correct form of the words in capitals at the end of each line. (WB; p. 59 / Test A)

Amazing (1) ------ (MEDICINE) advances are constantly taking place in these days of technological and scientific (2) ------. (DISCOVER) Many people expect instant cures, and prefer to get a (3) ----- (PRESCRIBE), but it is worth remembering that our immune systems can fight (4) ------ (INFECT) and diseases on their own, too. Research has been done to find out why some people survive cancer. One hundred people who had survived a serious (5) ------ (DIAGNOSE) were interviewed twelve years after they had been diagnosed. The (6) ------ (INTEND) of the study was to discover if there was anything in common with the ways in which they had acted after their diagnosis. They had all used different treatments such as (7) ------ (SURGEON), radiotherapy, acupuncture, and special diets. What they all had in common, however, was a strong (8) --------- (BELIEVE) that what they were doing would be (9) ------ (SUCCEED). This survey has limited (10) -----, (CONCLUDE) but one thing it shows is that a positive attitude can help your immune system to work.

ملحق لجدول الاشتقاقات مع مراجعة (حفظ)

Answers: 1. medical2. discoveries3. prescription4. infections5. diagnosis6. intention7. surgery8. belief9. successful10. conclusions

	Deri	vation (2)	
Verbs	Nouns	Adjectives	Adverbs
	إنتاج production	منتج productive	productively
يُنتج produce	منتـَج product	منتئج produced	بشكل منتج
	منتعج		
	producer		
X	(nine)	ninth	X
	میراث inheritance		
یرث inherit		موروث inherited	X
	وارث inheritor		
	اختراع invention	مخترع invented	
يخترع invent	مخترع	ابتكاري inventive	inventively
	inventor		بشکل ابتکار <i>ي</i> <b>X</b>
يؤثر influence	أثر influence	مؤثـبِّر influential	X
		متأثر influenced	
ينشئ originate	أصل origin	أصلي original	originally
	أصالة originality		بشكل أصلي
	41 t _ 211		1 1 24

- 50 -

تائر التموره

الفصل الأول

# **EXERCISES**

Q: Complete the sentences with words *formed* from the words in brackets. (WB; p.21)

- 1. The Middle East is famous for the ----- of olive oil. (produce)
- 2. Ibn Sina wrote ------ textbooks. (medicine)
- 3. Fatima al-Fihri was born in the ----- century. (nine)
- 4. My father bought our house with an ----- from his grandfather. (inherit)
- 5. Scholars have discovered an ----- document from the twelfth century. (origin)
- 6. Do you think the wheel was the most important ----- ever? (invent)
- 7. Al-Kindi made many important mathematical -----. (discover)
- 8. Who was the most ------ writer of the twentieth century? (influence)

Answers: .....

# أسئلة وزارية

# Complete the following sentences with the suitable words derived from the words in brackets and write the answers down in your ANSWER BOOKLET.

- The ...... system must be linked with the requirements of social and economic development for any country. (education) ► 2016 (W) -
- Jordan has a ..... of being a friendly and welcoming country. It is one of the safest places to visit in the Middle East. (repute) ▶ 2016 (W) -

3. Many candy advertisements are usually presented in an ...... manner in the TV. (attract) ▶ 2016 (S)

4. Markets have different types of food which are ...... prepared from animal products. (artificial) ▶ 2016 (S) -

5. The newly cons	structed projects	use recycled	water which	helps the .	 of
the environment.	(sustainable) <b>&gt;</b>	· 2017 (W)			

الفصل الأول

نائر الت<u>مورة</u>

- 6. Taha Hussein is one of the most ...... writers of the twentieth century. (influence) ► 2017 (W)
- 8. Artists usually meet to discuss ideas and ...... each other's work. (criticise , criticism , critic) ► 2018 (W) 3 POINTS
- 9. Madaba has a ..... as a fascinating place to visit. ► 2018 (S) (reputation , reputational , reputationally)
- 10. Khaled received an ..... letter from the manager for his hard work. (appreciate , appreciation , appreciatively)
- 11. Manal always presents her ..... work in literature clearly. (create , creative , creatively)
- 12. Bank customers can ..... their checking accounts instantly through the electronic system. ► 2019 (W)

(access , accessible , accessibly)

13. Hospitals have a ..... to provide the best medical care. (commit , committed , commitment)

14. ....., the process of producing rugs, bags and other beautiful items is done by hand.

(Tradition, Traditional, Traditionally)

- 15. The prices of certain items are not ..... in some shops. ► 2019 (1) (negotiate , negotiable , negotiably , negotiation)
- 16. This training course will ...... you for a better job. (qualify , qualification , qualifying , qualified)
- 17. The recycling project has been ..... carried out in my school. (success, successful , successfully , succeed)
- 18. The ..... of the internet has changed the world. (invent, invention, invented, inventive)

الفصل الاول

التمورة

تم التحميل من موقع الأوائل التعليمي www.awa2el.net
19. Majed has passed the final exams. ► 2019 (2) (success , successful , successfully , succeed)
20. Experts have proved that exercise is good for
21. Students to receive their results very soon. (expect, expectation, expectancy, expectantly)
<ul><li>22. Is one side of the brain more than the other?</li><li>(dominate , dominance , dominant , dominantly)</li></ul>
23. Scientists haveinvented a prosthetic hand with a sense of touch.≥ 2020A) successB) successfullyC) successfulD) succeed
24. Many people had to be after being exposed to the diseases.A) immunityB) immuneC) immunisationD) immunised
<ul> <li>25. Eating sensibly and taking regular exercise is a fairly method of losing weight.</li> <li>A) reliability B) reliable C) reliably D) reliance</li> </ul>
<ul><li>26. We should prioritise in already existing cities, rather than creating new ones.</li><li>A) sustainability B) sustained C) sustain D) sustainable</li></ul>
<ul><li>27. There are many ways to keep our children engaged when stuck at home.</li><li>A) academically B) academy C) academic D) academies</li></ul>
28. I think the rich industrial nations the global economy.A) dominationB) dominanceC) dominateD) dominant
29. Public areas and buildings are now moreto people with disabilities.A) accessB) accessesC) accessibilityD) accessible ► 2022
30. Abeer teaches Maths. She is a brilliant in my school.▶ 2022A) mathematicianB) mathematicalC) mathematicsD) mathematically
<u>ثائر النمورة</u> - 53 - <u>الفصل الأول</u>

# Module (2) The Future Continuous المستقبل المستمر

**Unit** (3)

Form : will + be + verb - ing (positive) / will not (won't) + be + verb-ing (negative)

Function (use): We use it to talk about a continuous action in the future. يستخدم هذا الزمن للحديث عن حدث سيكون مستمراً في المستقبل.

#### **Keywords:**

At this time (tomorrow) , (thirty minutes from now) , (later in ...), (in June), (in five years' time), (on Friday afternoon), Don't (phone) ..., Tomorrow night, Tonight after 8 p.m... etc.

## **Examples:**

- 1. This time next year, they will be preparing for their final exams. (prepare)
- 2. What will we be doing in ten years' time, Mr. Tha'er Al-Nammoura? (do)
- 3. At this time tomorrow, I will be sitting in class. (sit)
- 4. I <u>will be studying</u> when you come. (study)

(I will begin to study at seven. You will come at eight.)

- 5. At this time next week, I will be attending class. (attend)
- 6. Next year at this time, I will be doing exactly what I am doing now. (do)
- 7. An hour from now, the researchers will be doing their tasks. (do)
- 8. Don't phone between 5 and 8. I will be sleeping. (sleep)
- 9. Later in the programme, I'll be talking to the Minister of Health. (talk)
- 10. Next weekend at this time, I will be travelling to Canada. (travel)

# Note: This time next week I <u>will be</u> on holiday. I <u>will be going on</u> a picnic.

## Q1: Complete the mini-dialogues using the Future Continuous. (SB, p. 21)

1. A: Can I call you tonight after 6 p.m., or ...... (you have) dinner with your family then?

2. B: No, I ..... (not have) dinner at that time. I ..... (watch) the news. My

mum ...... (prepare) dinner, because we usually eat at about 7 p.m.

3. A: What do you think ...... (you do) in two years' time? ...... (you work), or ......... (you do) a university degree?

4. B: I certainly ......... (not work) because I want to do a degree in Medicine. It's a very long course, so I ........... (still study) in seven years' time!

## Answers:

- 1. will you be having 2. will not be having; will be watching; will be preparing
- 3. you will be doing ; Will you be working ; will you be doing
- 4. (will not / won't) be working ; will still be studying

الفصل الأول

ثائر النمورة

## Q2: Choose the correct form of the verbs. (SB, p.21)

1. If you need to contact me next week, we'll stay / be staying at a hotel in Aqaba.

2. If you need help to find a job, I will help / be helping you.

3. I can't call my dad right now. He'll **board / be boarding** the plane. It takes off in an hour.

4. We won't be home tomorrow night. We'll watch / be watching the football match at the stadium.

5. Do you think you'll miss / be missing your school friends when you go to university?

### **Answers:**

1. be staying 2. help 3. be boarding 4. be watching 5. miss

### Q3: There is one mistake in the verb tenses in each of the four conversations below. Underline the mistake and rewrite the verb in the correct tense. (WB; p. 16)

- 1. A: What do you think you will be doing in two years' time? B: I think I will be living in Karak, and I will study Geography.
- 2. A: Don't phone me at seven. I'll have dinner with my family. B: OK, I'll phone you at nine.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_

- 3. A: What time will you get here tomorrow? B: At about three, I think. I'll be texting you the exact time later.
- 4. A: Please be quiet when you come home tonight. The baby will sleep. B: Don't worry. I won't forget.

#### **Answers:**

1. will be studying 2. will be having 3. will text 4. will be sleeping





لفصل الاول

# **QUICK REVISION**

# Q: Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in the box. (WB, p.16)

going to + do , going to + miss , going to + take will + have , will + stay , will + tell

Rami has broken his leg. It (1) ..... a long time to get better. He (2) ..... in hospital for at least two weeks, and he (3) ..... his leg in plaster for much longer. Rami (4) ..... a lot of lessons at school, but he (5) ..... some work while he's in hospital, and he also hopes his friends (6) ..... him about the lessons he has missed.

## **Answers:**

1. is going to take 4. is going to miss

2. will stay 5. is going to do 6. will tell

3. will have

# The Future Perfect المستقبل التام

# Form: will + have + V.3 **Function:**

To talk about an action that will be completed by a particular time in the future. للحديث عن حدث سيكون مكتملاً بحلول وقت آخر محدد في المستقبل.

Key words: By (2025 CE), (By the time + V.1), (Three hours from now), (by five o'clock), (by then), ... etc.

## **Examples:**

- 1. By 2024, the new motorway will have opened. (open)
- 2. We're late ! By the time we get to the station, the train will have gone. (go)
- 3. Three hours from now, the event will have finished. (finish)

4. Sally always leaves for work at 8.30 in the morning. She won't be at home at 9 o'clock – she will have gone to work. (go)

- 5. We're late. The contest will already have started by the time we get to the cinema. (start)
- 6. By the time I arrive at the airport, the plane will have taken off. (take off)
- 7. Two days from now, students will have submitted their reports to the professor. (submit)
- 8. By 2026 CE, I will have left my job. (leave)
- 9. Twenty minutes from now, the students will have finished the task. (finish)
- 10. By the next time I see you, I will have graduated. (graduate)

الفصل الأول

- 56 -

ثائر النمورة

# Q1: Complete the sentences with the Future Perfect form of the verbs in brackets. (SB;

#### **p.25**)

1. This time tomorrow, we'll be celebrating because we ..... our exams. (finish)

- 2. This time next month, my parents ..... married for twenty years. (be)
- 3. The books that you ordered ..... by the end of the week. (not arrive)
- 4. By next year, ..... you ..... England? (visit)

### **Answers:**

1. will have finished 2. will have been 3. will not have arrived 4. will, have visited

## Q2: Complete the sentences in the Future Perfect or the Future Continuous. (WB; p.17)

1. Next month, we / live / in this house for a year. Let's celebrate!

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Next Monday, I / work / in my new job.

3. you / do / all your homework by eight o'clock?

-----

\_\_\_\_\_

4. It's three o'clock now, so Miriam's flight / arrive / at Queen Alia International Airport.

5. you / meet us / at the library this afternoon?

6 Vou can harrow this book tomorrow. I / finish / it by then

6. You can borrow this book tomorrow. I / finish / it by then.

## Answers:

1. Next month, we will have lived in this house for a year. Let's celebrate!

- 2. Next Monday, I will be working in my new job.
- 3. Will you have done all your homework by eight o'clock?

4. It's three o'clock now, so Mariam's flight will have arrived at Queen Alia International Airport.

- 57 -

5. Will you be meeting us at the library this afternoon?

6. You can borrow this book tomorrow. I'll have finished it by then.



تم التحميل من موقع الأوائل التعليمي www.awa2el.net
أسئلة وزارية منوعة    Future
1- Will you your homework by seven o'clock? (do) ▶ 2016 (W)
2- Next month, our family in this house for a year. (have, live) > 2016 (S)
3- In thirty years' time, scientists a cure for cancer. > 2018 (W)
(found , find , will have found , were finding)
4- By the end of this month, we in this house for a year.
(have lived, lived, will have lived) > 2019 (W)
5- We won't be home tomorrow night. We the football match at the
stadium. > 2020
A) were watching B) will be watching C) have watched D) had been watching
6- This time tomorrow, we because we will have finished our
exams. ► 2021
A. would have celebrated
B. will be celebrating
C. will have celebrated
D. had been celebrating
7- We won't be home tomorrow night. We the football
match at the stadium.
A. will be watching B. have watched C. have been watching D. were watching

الفصل الأول

- 58 -

# **Unit 4: Cleft Sentences**

هي جمل معقدة مكونة من جملتين اثنتين، جملة رئيسية وجملة ثانوية، كما ويمكن التعبير عن معناها بجمل بسيطة، ونستخدم هذا النوع من الجمل لتوكيد معلومات محددة، حيث نصل الأجزاء الأكثر أهمية فيها بجمل (عبارات) وصل تبدأ بـ who , where , that ،... إلخ، حيث نستطيع البدء بها بالآتي:

> The thing that / which... The person who ... The time when (in which) ... The place where (in which) ... The way in which ... What ...

**It** is / was ... that ...

Function: to emphasise certain pieces of information by using relative pronouns.

يستخدم هذا التركيب اللغوي لتوكيد معلومات معينة وتسليط الضوء عليها باستخدام ضمائر وصل.

## **Examples:**

1. I would like to go to London next year.

What I would like to do next year is go to London.

2. Huda won the prize for Art last year.

The person who won the prize for Art last year was Huda.

The prize that Huda won last year was for Art.

It was last year that Huda won the prize for Art.

3. The Olympic Games were held in London in 2012 CE.

It was in 2012 CE that the Olympic Games were held in London.

London was the place where the Olympic Games were held in 2012 CE.

The event that took place in London in 2012 CE was the Olympic Games.

الفصل الأول

- 59 -

تائر النمورة

Q1: Make cleft sentences, stressing the information in **bold**. (WB; p.20)

- **1. Queen Rania** opened the Children's Museum of Jordan in 2007 CE. It was ------
- 2. Petra was made a World Heritage Site in 1985 CE. The year ------.
- 3. I stopped working at 11 p.m. It was ------
- 4. **My father** has influenced me most. The person ------
- 5. I like Geography most of all.
- The subject ------.
- 6. **The heat** made the journey unpleasant.

It was -----.

#### Answers:

- 1. Queen Rania who opened the Children's Museum of Jordan in 2007 CE
- 2. when / in which Petra was made a World Heritage Site was 1985 CE
- 3. 11 p.m. when I stopped working
- 4. who / that has influenced me most is my father
- 5. that / which I like most of all is Geography
- 6. the heat that / which made the journey unpleasant

Q2: We want to emphasise the part of the sentence which is in **bold** in sentences 1-3. Match each one to an appropriate cleft sentence a-c. (SB; p.29)

- 1. The Great Mosque in Cordoba was built in 784 CE by Abd al Rahman I.
- 2. The Great Mosque in Cordoba was built in 784 CE by Abd al Rahman I.
- 3. The Great Mosque in Cordoba was built in 784 CE by Abd al Rahman *I*.

a. The year when the Great Mosque in Cordoba was built was 784 CE.

b. Abd al-Rahman I was the person who built the Great Mosque in Cordoba in 784 CE.

c. The mosque that was built by Abd al-Rahman *I* in 784 CE was the Great Mosque in Cordoba.

**Answers:** 1. b 2. c 3. a

الفصل الأول

- 60 -

التموره

# Q3: Write this sentence in three different ways, emphasising the parts underlined in each case. (SB; p. 29)

<u>Al-Jazari</u> invented the <u>mechanical clock</u> in <u>the twelfth century</u>.

### **Answers:**

- The person who invented the mechanical clock in the twelfth century was Al-Jazari. **OR** It was Al-Jazari who/that invented the mechanical clock in the twelfth century.
- The thing that Al-Jazari invented in the twelfth century was the mechanical clock. **OR** It was the mechanical clock that Al-Jazari invented in the twelfth century.
- The period / time when Al-Jazari invented the mechanical clock was the twelfth century. **OR** It was in the twelfth century that Al-Jazari invented the mechanical clock.

# Q4: Rewrite these sentences, emphasising the part in **bold**, and using the structure as shown (SB; p. 29)

- 1. Al-Kindi contributed to the invention of the oud. *The person who* ......
- 2. Jabir ibn Hayyan did his research in a laboratory in Iraq. The country where .....
- 3. Ali ibn Nafi' established the first music school in the world. It was .....
- 4. Jabir ibn Hayyan also invented ink that can be read in the dark. *It was* .....
- 5. Al-Kindi is especially famous for his work in geometry. It is .....

## **Answers:**

- 1. The person who contributed to the invention of the oud was Al-Kindi.
- 2. The country where Jabir ibn Hayyan did his research in a laboratory was Iraq.
- 3. It was Ali ibn Nafi' who established the first music school in the world.
- 4. It was Jabir ibn Hayyan who/that also invented ink that can be read in the dark.
- 5. It is for his work in geometry that Al-Kindi is especially famous.



التمورة

# أسئلة سنوات سابقة

<ul> <li>2. Taha Hussein is especially famous for his work in literature. ► 2016 (S) It is</li></ul>	1. The first athletic event for disabled athletes took place The year	
<ul> <li>The thing that</li></ul>		
<ul> <li>The year</li></ul>	3. My neighbours' generosity impresses me more than anything else. ► 2017 (W) The thing that	
<ul> <li>The thing</li></ul>		
<ul> <li>The year</li></ul>		
<ul> <li>A) who invented Al-Jazari the mathematical clock was in the twelfth century.</li> <li>B) who invented in the twelfth century the mathematical clock was AL-Jazari.</li> <li>C) who invented the twelfth century in the mathematical clock was AL-Jazari.</li> <li>D) who invented in the twelfth century Al-Jazari was the mathematical clock.</li> <li>8. Ali ibn Nafi' revolutionised the <u>musical theory</u> in the world. ▶ 2021</li> <li>The sentence which emphasises the underlined words is: <ul> <li>A) The thing that Ali ibn Nafi' revolutionised in the world was the musical theory.</li> <li>B) The person who revolutionised the musical theory in the world is Ali ibn Nafi'.</li> <li>C) It was Ali ibn Nafi' who revolutionised the musical theory in the world.</li> <li>D) The thing which revolutionised Ali ibn Nafi' was the musical theory in the world.</li> </ul> </li> <li>9. The person who won <u>Nobel Prize</u> for Literature in 1988 was Naguib Mahfouz. The sentence which emphasises the underlined words is: ▶ 2022</li> <li>A) The year when Naguib Mahfouz won Nobel Prize for Literature was 1988.</li> <li>B) The person who won Nobel Prize for Literature in 1988 was Naguib Mahfouz.</li> <li>C) It was Naguib Mahfouz who won Nobel Prize for Literature in 1988.</li> </ul>	6. The Great Mosque in Cordoba was built in 784 CE. The year	► 2019 (2)
<ul> <li>The sentence which emphasises the underlined words is: <ul> <li>A) The thing that Ali ibn Nafi' revolutionised in the world was the musical theory.</li> <li>B) The person who revolutionised the musical theory in the world is Ali ibn Nafi'.</li> <li>C) It was Ali ibn Nafi' who revolutionised the musical theory in the world.</li> <li>D) The thing which revolutionised Ali ibn Nafi' was the musical theory in the world.</li> </ul> </li> <li>9. The person who won Nobel Prize for Literature in 1988 was Naguib Mahfouz. The sentence which emphasises the underlined words is: ▶ 2022 <ul> <li>A) The year when Naguib Mahfouz won Nobel Prize for Literature was 1988.</li> <li>B) The person who won Nobel Prize for Literature in 1988 was Naguib Mahfouz.</li> <li>C) It was Naguib Mahfouz who won Nobel Prize for Literature in 1988.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul><li>A) who invented Al-Jazari the mathematical clock was in the twelfth century.</li><li>B) who invented in the twelfth century the mathematical clock was AL-Jazari.</li><li>C) who invented the twelfth century in the mathematical clock was AL-Jazari.</li></ul>	
<ul> <li>The sentence which emphasises the underlined words is: ▶ 2022</li> <li>A) The year when Naguib Mahfouz won Nobel Prize for Literature was 1988.</li> <li>B) The person who won Nobel Prize for Literature in 1988 was Naguib Mahfouz.</li> <li>C) It was Naguib Mahfouz who won Nobel Prize for Literature in 1988.</li> </ul>	<ul><li>The sentence which emphasises the underlined words is:</li><li>A) The thing that Ali ibn Nafi' revolutionised in the world was the musical theory.</li><li>B) The person who revolutionised the musical theory in the world is Ali ibn Nafi'.</li><li>C) It was Ali ibn Nafi' who revolutionised the musical theory in the world.</li></ul>	
<u>ثائر النمورة</u> - 62 - <u>الفصل الأول</u>		

# **Relative Clauses (defining & non-defining)**

# - Defining relative clauses: جمل الوصل المعرّفة

**Function:** The structure is used to identify which particular person, place or thing is being talked about.

وتستخدم (جمل الوصل المعرّفة) لتعريف وتحديد الشخص أو المكان أو الشيء الذي يُتحدث عنه، وتتصل هذه الجمل بالجمل الرئيسية (main clauses) بوساطة ضمائر وصل مثل: who, which, that, where, when ونستخدم who و that للتعبير عن العاقل، أما which و that فللتعبير عن غير العاقل، و whee للمكان، و when للزمان، و whose للملكية أو الاختصاص، فعلى سبيل المثال:

Example: He's the man whose son I met in Jordan.

# - Non-defining relative clauses: جمل الوصل غير المعرّفة

**Function:** The structure is used to give more detail (extra information) about a particular person, place or thing that is being talked about.

وتستخدم جمل الوصل غير المعرّفة لإعطاء معلومات وتفاصيل إضافية عن الشخص أو المكان أو الشيء الذي يُتحدث عنه، وتتصل ببقية أطراف الجملة بوساطة ضمائر الوصل المذكورة بالنوع الأول.

Example: The Sahara desert , which is in Africa , is very hot.

الفرق بين النوعين أن الـ defining clause تعطي معلومات أساسية (essential) لا تقوم الجملة إلا بها، ولا يمكن الاستغناء عنها، أما الـ non-defining فتقدم معلومات إضافية (additional) يمكن حذفها من غير ضرر ولا إشكال.

Example: The Sahara desert is very hot.

#### ملحوظة:

- في جمل الوصل غير المعرفة تـ وضع بين **فاصلتين** أو شرطتين أو قوسين، مالم يتم إنهاء الجملة بنقطة.

- 63 -

الفصل الأول

ثائر النمورة

# Q1: Complete the text with the correct word from the box. Sometimes, more than one answer is possible. (SB; p.31)

#### that , which , where , who

Qasr Bashir is an extremely well-preserved Roman castle (1) ------ is situated in the Jordanian desert, and is about eighty kilometres south of Amman.

The walls and huge corner towers of the castle, (2) ------ was built at the beginning of the fourth century CE, are still standing.

It is thought that Qasr Bashir was built to protect the Roman border. Apart from the rooms in the castle, there are also about twenty-three stables (3) ------ horses may have been kept.

People (4) ------ love exploring historical Roman ruins will certainly find a visit to Qasr Bashir very rewarding. Once inside the building, one can imagine very vividly what it would have been like to live there during the times of the Roman Empire.

Answers: 1. which / that 2. which 3. where 4. who / that

#### Q2: Read the passage below and answer the questions. (SB; p.30)

## **The Giralda**

**The Giralda** tower, which is one of the most important buildings in Seville, Spain, stands at just over 104 metres tall. The person who is believed to be responsible for the design of the tower, which was originally a minaret, is the mathematician and astronomer Jabir ibn Aflah. The architect of the tower was Ahmad Ben Baso, who began work in 1184 CE. He died before the tower was completed in 1198 CE. The design of the tower is believed to be based on the Koutoubia Mosque, which is in Marrakesh, Morocco, and the Hassan Tower in Rabat.

1. Identify the defining and non-defining relative clauses in the text.

2. What relative pronouns do we use for the things in the box?

.....

#### people animals and things places

#### Answers:

- **1. Defining relative clauses:** 
  - who is believed to be responsible for the design of the tower

## Non-defining relative clauses:

- which is one of the most important buildings in Seville, Spain
- which was originally a minaret
- who began work in 1184 CE
- which is in Marrakesh, Morocco
- 2. people who , that / animals and things which, that / places where , which , that

الفصل الأول

#### - 64 -

ثائر النمورة

# Q3: Match the beginnings with the correct endings and join them with a relative pronoun. Then, write the sentences out in full. (WB; p.21)

- 1. A mathematician is someone ......
- 2. Geometry and arithmetic are subjects ...
- 3. 'Physician' is an old-fashioned word ...
- 4. A chemist is a person ...
- 5. The stars and planets are things ...
- a. are studied by mathematicians.
- b. means 'doctor'.
- c. works with numbers.
- d. astronomers study.
- e. works in a laboratory.

#### **Answers:**

- 1. c. A mathematician is someone who works with numbers.
- 2. a. Geometry and arithmetic are subjects that / which are studied by mathematicians.
- 3. b. 'Physician' is an old-fashioned word that / which means 'doctor'.
- 4. e. A chemist is a person who / that works in a laboratory.
- 5. d. The stars and planets are things that / which astronomers study.

# Q4: Complete the text about Ibn Sina, using the relative pronouns in the box. One pronoun is used twice. Add commas for the non-defining relative clauses. (WB; 21)

that when which who

Ibn Sina (1) ------ is also known as Avicenna was a **polymath**. Ibn Sina was influenced as a young man by the works of the philosopher Aristotle. He wrote on early Islamic philosophy (2) ------included many subjects, especially logic and ethics. He also wrote Al Qanun fi-Tibb, the book (3) ------ became the most famous medical textbook ever. In the last ten or twelve years of his life, Ibn Sina started studying literary matters. His friends (4) ------ were worried about his health advised him to relax. He refused and told them 'I prefer a short life with width to a narrow one with length.' It was the month of Ramadan (5) ------ Ibn Sina died, in June 1037 CE.

- 65 -

#### **Answers:**

- 1., who is also known as Avicenna,
- 2. ,which included many subjects,
- 3. that 4. , who were worried about his health, 5. when





تم التحميل من موقع الأوائل التعليمي www.awa2el.net
Q5: 'I prefer a short life with width to a narrow one with length.' Do you <u>agree</u> with Ibn Sina's quote? Why/ Why not? Try to use <u>cleft sentences</u> with <u>defining and non- defining relative clauses</u> in your answer. (WB; p.21)
A SUGGESTED ANSWER (OPEN "FREE"): Yes, I agree with Ibn Sina; he is a famous polymath who has influenced me significantly. He shows that if you work hard you can achieve so much in a short space of time.
أسئلة وزارية
The underlined words in the following sentence are not used correctly. Replace these words with the correct ones. (2 points)
1. Most Jordanians <u>used to</u> the hot weather <u>where</u> we have in summer. ► 2016 (W)
<ul> <li>2. Zaid's friends <u>are used to go fishing once a month, but they stopped doing that when they moved to <u>a</u> city of Irbid. ► 2016 (S)</u></li> </ul>
3. The prize Huda won last year was for Art. ► 2018 (W) – 2 POINTS
(when, where, which, who)
4. The students cleaned the street, are from our school. ► 2018 (S) (which , who , when , whose)
5. The person has influenced me most is my father. ► 2019 (W) (which , who , when , whose)
6. Plastic is the material causes a lot of pollution. (whose , who , where , which) > 2019 (1)
<ul> <li>7. I always go to the supermarket sells organic vegetables.</li> <li>(who , which , whose , whom) &gt; 2019 (2)</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>8. It is for his work in geometry Al-Kindy is especially famous. ▶ 2022</li> <li>A. who</li> <li>B. that</li> <li>C. where</li> <li>D. when</li> </ul>
<u>ثائر النمورة</u> - 66 - <u>الفصل الأول</u>

# COMPREHENSION

# VOCABULARY

### Module 1: Starting out \ Unit 1: Information Technology

No.	Words	Meanings (E)	Meanings (A)
1	calculation	a way of using numbers in	عملية حسابية
		order to find out an	
		amount, price or value.	
2	computer chip	a small piece inside a	رقاقة حاسوب
		computer which stores	
		information via an	
		electric current.	
3	floppy disk	a flexible, removable	القرص المرن ''فلوبي ديسك''
		magnetic disk that stores	"فلوبي ديسك"
		computer information.	
4	PC	an abbreviation for	الحاسوب الشخصي
		personal computer,	
		a computer that is used	
		by one person at a time.	
5	program	a set of instructions	برنامج حاسوب
		enabling a computer to	
		function.	4 . 4
6	programme	content which is intended	برنامج على الإذاعة
		to be listened to on radio	أو التلفاز
		or watched on television.	
7	rely on	to have trust or	یعتمد علی / یثق ب
		confidence in something	
		or someone.	
8	smartphone	a mobile phone with	الهاتف الذكي
		advanced computing	
		technology.	
9	World Wide	an information system,	الشبكة العنكبوتية
	Web	known as the Internet,	العسسالميسة
		which allows documents	
		to be connected to other	
		documents, and for people	
		to search for information	
		by moving from one	
		document to another.	
	الفصل الأول	<u>النمورة</u> - 69-	ثائر
		-03 -	

#### Module 1: Starting out \ Unit 1: Information Technology

# The History of Computers (SB; p.6) تاريخ الحواسيب

When <u>you</u> are using a computer, think about the technology <u>that(1)</u> is needed for it to work. People have been using types of computers for thousands of years. A metal machine was found on the seabed in Greece that was more than 2,000 years old. It is believed that <u>this</u> was the first ever computer.

عندما تستخدم جهاز الحاسوب، فإن عليك أن تفكر بالتكنولوجيا (التقنيات) الضرورية لعمل هذا الجهاز، فالبشر لا يزالون يستخدمون أنواعاً من الحواسيب منذ آلاف السنين، وقد تم العثور على آلة معدنية في قاع البحر في اليونان يزيد عمرها على ألفيّ عام، حيث يعتقد أنه كان جهاز الحاسوب الأول على الإطلاق.

In the 1940s, technology had developed enough for inventors to make the first generation of modern computers. One such model was so large <u>it</u> needed a room that was 167 square metres to **accommodate** it. During that **decade**, scientists in England developed the first computer program. It took 25 minutes to **complete** one calculation. In 1958 CE, the <u>computer chip</u> was developed.

وفي الأربعينيات، تطورت التكنولوجيا بدرجة كافية ليقوم المخترعون بصنع الجيل الأول من الحواسيب الحديثة، وهذا الحاسوب كان كبيراً لدرجة أنه بحاجة إلى غرفة مساحتها 167 متراً مربعاً ليوضع فيها، وخلال ذلك العقد، فإن العلماء في إنجلترا قاموا بتطوير أول برنامج للحاسوب، حيث كان يستغرق 25 دقيقة ليقوم بعملية حسابية واحدة كاملة، وفي عام 1958، تمّ تطوير رقاقة الحاسوب.

The first **computer game** was produced in 1962 CE, followed two years later by the **computer mouse**. In 1971 CE, the **floppy disk** was invented, which meant that information could be shared between computers for the first time. The first PC (personal computer) was produced in 1974 CE, so people could buy computers to use at home.

وفي عام 1962، تم إنتاج أول لعبة على الحاسوب، وبعدها بسنتين اثنتين تم إنتاج ماوس الحاسوب "الفأرة"، أما في عام 1971 فقد تم اختراع السا "فلوبي ديسك"، الأمر الذي عنى إمكانية تبادل ونقل المعلومات بين أجهزة الحواسيب لأول مرّة، وقد تم إنتاج أول حاسوب شخصي عام 1974، وبالتالي استطاع الناس أن يشتروا حواسيب لاستعمالها في المنازل.

In 1983 CE, people could buy **a laptop** for the first time. Then, in 1990 CE, the British scientist Tim Berners-Lee developed the World Wide Web. However, it was not until 2007 that the first smartphones appeared. Today, most people use <u>their</u> mobile phones every day.

وفي عام 1983، استطاع الناس أن يشتروا أجهزة الحواسيب المحمولة لأول مرة، وبعدها في عام 1990 تمكن العالم البريطاني "تيم بيرنرز لي" من تطوير الشبكة العنكبوتية العالمية، وعلى أية حال، فإن أجهزة الهاتف النقال الذكي لم تظهر حتى عام 2007م، أما في أيامنا هذه، فإن معظم الناس يستخدمون أجهزة الهاتف النقال كل يوم.

-70 -

الفصل الأول

What will happen in the future? You can already buy watches <u>which</u> can do the same as mobile phones. Scientists have also developed glasses <u>that (2)</u> are **capable** of doing even more than this.

وما الذي سيحدث في المستقبل؟ باستطاعتك الآن شراء ساعات يد تقوم بما تقوم به أجهزة الهاتف المحمول، كما أن العلماء ابتكروا وطوروا نظارات تقوم بنفس الغرض وزيادة.

Life in the future is going to see further changes in computer technology. It is likely that all aspects of everyday life will rely on a computer program, from how we travel to how our homes are heated.

إنّ الحياة في المستقبل ستشهد مزيداً من التغيرات في تكنولوجيا الحاسوب، ومن المحتمل أن كل جوانب الحياة ستعتمد على برامج الحاسوب من كيفية السفر والتنقل إلى كيفية تدفئة البيوت.

#### **QUESTIONS**

1. What should you do when you are using a computer?

2. What was the first ever computer? Where was it found? When?

3. Where was the first computer program developed by scientists? When?

4. How long did it take to complete one calculation in the 1940s?

5. Write down (Quote) the sentence which indicates the time of the development of the computer chip.

-----

**6.** When was the first computer mouse produced?

7. Quote the sentence that indicates the first emergence of a computer game and a mouse.

8. Comment on the significance of the floppy disk when it was invented in 1971CE.

9. What was the problem with the first generation of modern computers?

10. Write down the sentence which indicates the year in which the first personal computer was produced and that people could purchase personal computers.

-71 -

11. When could people buy a laptop for the first time?

\_\_\_\_\_

12. Who developed the World Wide Web? When?

الفصل الأول

<u>ثائر النمورة</u>

\_\_\_\_\_

13. The first appearance of smartphones was in 2005 CE. TRUE FALSE14. Write down the sentence which indicates that most people utilize their mobile phones daily.

15. The writer mentions two examples of new inventions related to computers. Write down these two inventions.

16. What is the writer's prediction regarding computer technology?

17. The writer states that it is probable that life will depend on a computer program in the future. Write down two of these aspects.

-----

18. List the inventions that were completed between 1958 CE and 1974 CE. (SB; P.7)

19. How do you think computer technology will develop further in the future? **How far** do you **agree** with the article? (**Critical Thinking**) (SB; P.7)

20. We rely more and more on computer technology. **How far** do you **agree** that this a positive development? (**Critical Thinking**) (SB; P.7)

21. Users of computers are always in danger due to online crimes. Explain this

statement, suggesting three ways for being well-protected. (Critical Thinking)

22. Find **a phrasal verb** in the text which means "**to have trust or confidence in something or someone.**"

23. What do the underlined words (pronouns) refer to?

------

24. What does the underlined compound noun **<u>computer chip</u>** mean?

-----

25. What does the acronym (abbreviation) PC stand for?

#### 26. RESEARCH BOX (SB; p.7)

When was the world's first email sent and why did it use the @ symbol?



ثائر النمورة

### **MODEL ANSWERS**

1. I should think about the technology that is needed for it to work.

2. A metal machine was found on the seabed in Greece that was more than 2000 years old.

3. in England in the 1940s.

4. It took 25 minutes to complete one calculation.

5. "In 1958 CE, the computer chip was developed."

6. In 1964

7. "The first computer game was produced in 1962 CE, followed two years later by the computer mouse."

8. It meant that information could be shared between computers.

9. This model of computers was so large that it needed a room that was 167 square metres to accommodate it.

10. "The first PC (personal computer) was produced in 1974 CE, so people could buy computers to use at home."

11. In 1983

12. The British scientist Tim Berners-Lee developed it in 1990 CE.

13. **FALSE** 

14. "Today, most people use their mobile phones every day."

15. - watches which can do the same as mobile phones.

-glasses that are capable of doing even more than this.

16. The writer states that life in the future is going to see further changes in computer technology. It is likely that all aspects of everyday life rely on a computer program, from how we travel to how our homes are heated.

17. - the way of travelling - the way of heating our homes

18. the computer chip, the first computer game, the computer mouse, the floppy disk, the first personal computer (PC)

19. I think that computer technology will develop further in the future to the point that it will 'know' how to address our every need. We will not have to think about everyday tasks like shopping and cleaning because technology will take care of them. **I disagree** with the article because I do not think that all aspects of our daily lives will rely on a computer program, because this would result in too many

problems if the computers (جواب مقترح " نص حرفي " من <u>دليل المعلم الوزاري</u>) crashed.

20. **I agree** that computers have enabled us to do many great things, but becoming overly reliant on technology is not a positive aspect of this development.

(جواب مقترح " نص حرفي " من دليل المعلم الوزاري)

للمورة



21. I think that people are always at risk because of techno-criminals who try to hack online computers, but there are many ways for being well-protected such as:

- being careful when a suspicious email or link is received;

- installing anti-virus programs and an Internet security software;

-using difficult passwords for different accounts on the Web. (جواب من اقتراحی)

#### 22. rely on

23. - you: the reader / that (1): the technology /

- this: a metal machine / it : such model (of the first generation of modern computers).

- their: most people / which: watches

- that (2): glasses

24. a small piece inside a computer which stores information via an electric current

25. personal computer

26. The first email was sent in <u>1971</u> CE by **Ray Tomlinson**, who used the @ symbol to separate the name of the person to who he sent the email and the name of their computer.

#### VOCABULARY- WB; p. 6

#### Q1: Match the descriptions with the words in the box. One word is not needed.

computer chip , calculation , floppy disk , smartphone ,

program, PC, World Wide Web

- 1. a mobile phone that connects to the Internet (------)
- 2. a very small piece found inside every computer (------)
- 3. a small square piece of plastic that was used to store information from computers (-----)
- 4. a computer designed for one person to use (------)
- 5. when you use maths to work out an answer (-----)
- 6. all the information shared by computers through the Internet (------)

#### ANSWERS

\_\_\_\_\_

#### Q2: Choose the correct word.

- 1. Modern computers can run a lot of **programs / models** at the same time.
- 2. You can move around the computer screen using a tablet / mouse.
- 3. From 1990 CE to 2000 CE was a **decade / generation**.
- 4. A **laptop / tablet** doesn't need a keyboard.

5. The television was first **invented / developed** by John Logie Baird.

#### ANSWERS: 1. programs 2. mouse 3. decade 4. tablet 5. invented

الفصل الاول

-74 -

ثائر النمورة

#### Q3: Complete the sentences. Use words from exercises 1 and 2.

- 1. Although they are pocket-sized, -----s are powerful computers as well as phones.
- 2. My brother is learning how to write computer -----s.
- 3. I need to make a few -----s before I decide how much to spend.
- 4. Mobile phones used to be huge. Early -----s were as big as bricks!
- 5. I can close the lid of my ----- and then put it in my bag.

#### ANSWERS

1. smartphone 2.program 3. calculation 4. model 5. laptop

-----♥ثائر النمورة♥\_\_\_\_\_

#### Using Technology in Class (SB; p. 8) استخدام التكنولوجيا في الصف

No.	Words	Meanings (E)	Meanings (A)	
1	blog	a regularly updated personal	مدوّنة	
		website or web page, usually		
		written in an informal style.		
2	email exchange	a series of emails between two	تبادل الإيميلات	
		or more people, each email is		
		generally a reply to the previous		
		one.		
3	post	to put a message or document		
		on the Internet so that other	ينشر	
		people can see it.		
4	social media	social interaction between	التواصل الاجتماعي	
		people and communities on		
		websites or blogs.		
5	tablet computer	a mobile computer, with a touch		
		screen, processor and battery all	الحاسوب اللوحي	
		in one unit.	الحاسوب اللوحي اللوح الأبيض	
6	whiteboard	a touchscreen computer program	اللوح الأبيض	
		that enables you to draw sketches,		
		write and present ideas and talks to		
		colleagues or students.		
<u>ثائر النمورة</u> - 75- <u>الفصل الأول</u>				

#### **Using Technology in Class**

Young people love learning, but <u>they (1)</u> like learning even more if they are presented with information in an interesting and challenging way. Today, <u>I</u> am going to give a talk about how you can use technology in Jordanian classrooms.

الشباب اليافعون يحبون التعلم، ولكنهم يحبونه أكثر إذا ما تم تقديم المعلّومات فيه بطريقة ممتعة تتسمّ بالتحدي، أما اليوم فسأقوم بالحديث عن كيفية استخدام التكنولوجيا في الغُرَف الصفية في الأردن.

#### وفيما يلي بعض الأفكار ... Here are some ideas:

Many classrooms now use a whiteboard as a computer screen. As a consequence, teachers can show websites on the board in front of the class. Teachers can then use the Internet to show educational programmes, play educational games, music, recordings of languages, and so on.

حالياً، العديد من الغرف الصفية يتم فيها استخدام اللوح الأبيض كشاشة حاسوب، ونتيجة لذلك، يمكن للمعلمين أن يقوموا بعرض مواقع إلكترونية على اللوح أمام جميع الطلاب في الصف، كما يمكن لهم أن يستخدموا الإنترنت لعرض برامج تعليمية، ولعب ألعاب تعليمية، وتشغيل الموسيقى، وتسجيلات اللغة، وغير ذلك.

In some countries, tablet computers are available for students to use in class. **Therefore**, students can use the tablets to **do tasks** such as showing photographs, researching information, recording interviews and creating diagrams. **Tablets are ideal for pair and group work**.

في بعض الدول، فإن الحواسيب اللوحية متاحة ليستخدمها الطلاب في الصف، ولذا يمكن للطلاب أن يستخدموهاً للقيام بالوظائف كعرض الصور الفوتوغرافية، والبحث عن المعلومات، وتسجيل المقابلات، ورسم الرسوم البيانية، كما أن الحواسيب اللوحية مناسبة للعمل بشكل ثنائي أو جماعي.

Teachers can perhaps ask <u>their</u> students to start writing a blog (an online diary), either about *their* own lives or as if <u>they (2)</u> were someone famous. They can also create a website for the classroom. Students can contribute to the website, **so for example they (3)** can post work, photos and messages.

ولربما يطلب المعلمون من طلابهم أن يبدؤوا بكتابة مدوّنة (مفكرة عبر الإنترنت)، إما عن حياتهم أو باعتبار هم أنفسهم شخصاً معروفاً، كما بإمكانهم إنشاء موقع إلكتروني للصف، وبالتالي يستطيع الطلاب أن يساهموا في الموقع كنشر أعمال وصور ورسائل.

Most young people communicate through social media, by <u>which they (4)</u> send each other photos and messages via the Internet. Some students like to send messages <u>that</u> are under 140 letters for anyone to read. Teachers can ask students to summarise information about what they have learnt in class in the same way.

If students learn to summarise quickly, they will be able to use this skill in future.

-76 -

الفصل الأول



يتواصل معظم الشباب عن طريق مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي، والتي من خلالها يستطيعون أن يرسلوا صوراً ورسائل لبعضهم البعض بوساطة الإنترنت، فإن بعض الطلاب يفضلون إرسال رسائل أقل من 140 حرفاً ليتم قراءتها من قبل شخص آخر. كما أن باستطاعة المعلمين تكليف طلابهم بتلخيص المعلومات التي قد تعلموها في الصف بنفس الطريقة، وإذا ما قام الطلاب بالتلخيص بسرعة، فإنهم سيكونون قادرين على استخدام هذه المهارة في المستقبل.

We all like to send emails, don't we? Email exchanges are very useful in the classroom. Teachers can ask students to email what they have learnt to students of a similar age at another school. They could even email students in another country. As a result, students can then share information and help each other with tasks. كلنا نحب إرسال الإيميلات، أليس كذلك؟ إن تبادل الإيميلات مفيد جداً في الغرفة الصفية، وبإمكان المعلمين تكليف

طلابهم بإرسال إيميلات تحتوي ما تعلمونه إلى أقرانهم في مدرسة أخرى، كما أن بإمكانهم أرسال ذلك لطلاب من دولة أخرى، ونتيجة لذلك، يمكن للطلاب أن يتبادلوا المعلومات ويساعدوا بعضهم البعض بأداء الوظائف .

Another way of communicating with other schools is through talking to people over the computer. Most computers have cameras, so you can also see the people you are talking to. In this way, students <u>who</u> are studying English in Jordan can see what students in England are doing in the classroom while they are speaking to <u>them (1)</u>. You can also use this system to invite guest speakers to give talks over a computer.

For example, scientists or teachers from another country could give a lesson to the class. If you had this type of lesson, the students would be very excited.

و يعد الحديث مع أناس آخرين عبر جهاز الحاسوب من الطرق للتواصل مع المدارس الأخرى، فإن معظم الحواسيب تحوي كاميرات، ولذا فإنه يمكنك رؤية من تتحدّث إليهم، وبهذه الطريقة، يمكن للطلبة الذين يدرسون اللغة الإنجليزية في الأردن مشاهدة ما يفعله الطلاب في الغرف الصفية في إنجلترا عند التحدث إليهم، كما ويمكنك أيضاً استخدام هذا النظام لدعوة المتحدثين الضيوف للحديث عبر جهاز الحاسوب، فعلى سبيل المثال، يمكن للعلماء والمعلمين من دولة أخرى تقديم درس للصف، وإذا كان عندك هذا النوع من الدروس، فإن الطلاب سيكونون مستمتعين.

Students often use computers at home if **they** have <u>them (2)</u>. Students can use social media on their computers to help them with their studies, including asking other students to check and compare their work, asking questions and sharing ideas. The teacher must be part of the group, too, to monitor what is happening.

#### Thank you for listening. Does anyone have any questions?

غالباً ما يستعمل الطلاب أجهزة الحاسوب حال امتلاّحها، كما يمكنهم أستخدام مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي من خلال حواسيبهم لمساعدتهم بدراساتهم بما يشمل كذلك الطلب من الطلاب التحقق من الحل ومقارنة العمل، وسوّال الأسئلة، ومشاركة الأفكار، ولا بد للمعلم أن يكون جزءاً من المجموعة أيضاً لمتابعة ما يحدث. شكراً لاستماعكم، هل عندكم من سوّال؟



الفصل الاول



-77 -



ثائر النمورة

### QUESTIONS

<ol> <li>Find a word in the text that means "a regularly updated personal website or web page, usually written in an informal style."</li> </ol>
2. Young people love learning but with two characteristics for the way of presenting information. Write down these two characteristics.
3. Quote the sentence which indicates the topic of the talk.
4. Teachers can use the Internet for many purposes. Write down two of these purposes.
5. Mention the tasks which can be done using tablet computers in classrooms.
<ul> <li>6. Tablets are suitable only for working individually in classrooms. TRUE FALSE</li> <li>7. Give a brief definition for a blog</li> <li>8. Teachers can ask their students to write a blog in two forms. Write down these two forms.</li> </ul>
9. Students can contribute to the class website. Explain this statement.
10. What is the benefit (value) of summarising quickly by students?
11. Write down the sentence which indicates the number of letters of messages which students like to send.
12. What do most young people usually send to each other through the Internet (social media)?
13. Find out <b>a question tag</b> in the text above.
14. How can students employ email exchanges in the process of learning?
15. What is the benefit of using email exchanges in education?
16. You can communicate with other schools by many ways. Mention two of them.
17. Give an example from the text to show the significance of having computers with cameras in the scope of education. (As students from different cultures).
<u>ثائر النمورة</u> - 78- <u>الفصل الأول</u>

18. We can also use online computers to give talks over a computer. Clarify this.

19. What is the positive side of having online lessons? ------

20. Social media can be used by students to help them. Explain this statement.

21. Why is it **a must** for the teacher to be part of the group?

22. What do the underlined pronouns refer to?

23. In what ways can digital information be used to educate people? (SB; p. 8)

23. In what ways can digital information be used to educate people? (SD; p. 8)

24. Do you think that computers will replace books one day? Why /Why not? (SB;p.8)

25. Online addiction is a serious problem nowadays. Explain this statement, **suggesting three ways** for avoiding this phenomenon.

-----

### **MODEL ANSWERS**

- 1. blog
- 2. an interesting way a challenging way
- 3. Today, I am going to give a talk about how you can use technology in Jordanian classrooms.
- 4. to show educational programmes to play educational games
- to play music to play recordings of languages (Any 2 of them)
- 5. Students can use the tablets to do tasks such as showing photographs, researching information, recording interviews and creating diagrams.

#### 6. FALSE

- 7. an online diary
- 8. to start writing a blog about their own lives ;
  - or as if they were someone famous
- 9. The students can post work, photos and messages.
- 10. If students learn to summarise quickly, they will be able to use this skill in future.
- 11. "Some students like to send messages that are under 140 letters for anyone to read."
- 12. photos messages
- 13. don't we? (We all like to send emails, <u>don't we?)</u>

14. Teachers can ask students to email what they have learnt to students of a similar age at another school. They could even email students in another country.

- 15. Students can then share information and help each other with tasks.
- 16. email exchanges talking to people over the computer using cameras.

الفصل الاول

-79 -

ثائر النمورة

17. Students who are studying English in Jordan can see what students in England are doing in the classroom while they are speaking to them.

18. Scientists or teachers from another country could give a lesson to the class.

19. If you had this type of lesson, the students would be very **excited**.

20. Students can use social media on their computers to help them with their studies, including asking other students to check and compare their work, asking questions and sharing ideas.

- 21. to monitor what is happening.
- 22. they (1): Young people / I: the writer (presenter) / their: Teachers / they (2,3): students / which: social media / they (4): Most young people / that: messages / who: students / them (1): students in England / them (2): computers

23. Digital information can be used to educate people in a variety of ways. For example, you can listen to podcasts and lectures online, or use apps on a tablet to learn languages. You can also use the Internet to find information on what you are studying. (TEACHER'S BOOK "TB")

24. Although computers are incredibly useful, I don't think that they will ever completely replace books because, for many people, reading is a very personal experience that doesn't feel the same when it is done on a computer. (TB)

25. No one can doubt that online addiction is a main concern nowadays, but we can avoid this problem by many ways such as:

- managing and controlling your time when you're online;
- reading paper-based newspapers, magazines and books;
- doing exercises (sports) in space time instead of sitting before computers.

#### VOCABULARY (SB; p.9) SPEAKING

Q1. Which of the following would you use to ...

blog , email exchange, social media , tablet computer , whiteboard

- 1. record interviews with people? ------
- 2. share information with students in another country? ------
- 3. watch educational programmes in class? ------
- 4. ask another student to check your homework? ------
- 5. write an online diary? -----

Answers: 1. tablet computer 2. email exchange 3. whiteboard 4. social media 5. blog

الفصل الأول

-80 -

ثائر النمورة

#### Q2: Explain the difference in meaning between these phrases from the article.

**1. share ideas:** to give your ideas to another person or to a group **compare ideas:** where two or more people consider how their ideas are similar or different

- 2. create a website: to construct a website that currently does not exist contribute to a website: offer your writing and work to the website.
- **3. research information:** to use a variety of sources to find the information you need **present information:** to give the results of your research in a presentation

**4. monitor what is happening:** you know what is happening and you are following the developments

**find out what is happening:** you don't know what is happening and you want to discover it

**5. give a talk to people:** you have prepared a speech and you are giving this speech to a group of people who are expecting it

talk to people: an informal discussion

6. show photos: you show people photos that you have in person send photos: you send photos to someone over the Internet or by post

**MOE** (2017 W): Study the following sentences and answer the question that follows.

1. Kareem shared a large number of ideas with the committee.

2. The student **compared his ideas** with his teacher's.

Explain the difference in meaning between the underlined phrases in the sentences.

#### Q3: Complete the sentences so they are true for you. (SB; 9)

- 1. My teacher says I must ..... 2. In our English lessons, I can ......
- 5. If I had more time, I would ...... 6. If I use a computer, I .....
- 7. If the teacher gives us homework today, I .....

#### **Suggested Answers:**

- 1. My teacher says I must learn these words.
- 2. In our English lessons, I can use a dictionary.
- 3. I use technology to help me to do my homework.
- 4. Next year, I will start to learn Spanish.
- 5. If I had more time, I would learn another language.
- 6. If I use a computer, I learn a lot of useful information.
- 7. If the teacher gives us homework today, I will do it before I watch TV.

الفصل الأول

-81 -

نائر النمورة

### VOCABULARY (SB: p.10)

ings یصل برنام انتحا
برنام
انتحا
انتحا
انتحا
ضبط
ضبط الخص <b>ضبط</b>
ضبط
تک
المعلو
نظ
عبر ا
4
برنام
برنام إلاً
برنام إلاً استض

### Q: Complete the verb phrases and phrasal verbs with the correct words. (SB;p.10)

	(11), $01$	1, OUT,	about,	with )		
1. to <b>know</b>	dangers of the	Internet				
2. to <b>connect</b>	people on the	Internet				
3. to <b>turn</b>	privacy setting	gs				
4. to <b>give</b>	personal inforr	nation				
5. to <b>fill</b> a	a form	Answers: 1.	about 2. wit	th 3. on	<b>4. out</b>	5. in
•	E			1 1 ch 20		
ول	الفصل الأ	-82 -	مورہ	ثائر ال		

-82 -

#### The Internet of Things (WB; p.8) (إنترنت الأشياء)

#### ماهو إنترنت الأشياء ?? What is the 'Internet of Things'

Everyone knows that the Internet connects people, but now  $\underline{it (1)}$  does more than that – it connects **objects**, too. These days, computers **often** communicate with each other; **for example**, your TV automatically downloads your favourite TV show, or your 'sat nav' system tells you where you are. This is known as the 'Internet of Things', and there's a lot more to come.

كلنا يعلم أن الإنترنت يربط الناس بعضهم ببعض، ولكنه الآن يقوم بأكثر من ذلك أيضاً، ففي هذه الأيام، تقوم أجهزة الحواسيب بالتواصل مع بعضها البعض، فعلى سبيل المثال، يقوم التلفاز بتحميل العرض التلفازي المفضل لديك، كما يقوم نظام الملاحة عبر الأقمار الصناعية بإخبارك بمكانك، وهذا ما يعرف بإنترنت الأشياء، ولا زال في جُعبة الأيام الكثير الكثير.

#### An easy life! حياة سبهلة

In just a few years' time, experts say that billions of machines will be connected to each other and to the Internet. As a consequence, computers will increasingly run our lives for us. For example, your fridge will know when you need more milk and add <u>it (2)</u> to your online shopping list; your windows will close if it is likely to rain; your watch will record your heart rate and email your doctor; and your sofa will tell you when you need to stand up and get some exercises!

وخلال عدة سنوات، يقول الخبراء بأن بلايين الآلات ستكون متصلة ببعضها البعض وبالإنترنت، ونتيجة لذلك، ستقوم الحواسيب بإدارة حياتنا بشكل متزايد، فعلى سبيل المثال، ستعرف الثلاجة موعد حاجتك للمزيد من الحليب، وتقوم بإضافة ذلك للائحة التسوق عبر الإنترنت، كما أن النوافذ تقوم بإغلاق نفسها ذاتياً عند احتمالية نزول المطر، ناهيك عن ساعة يدك والتي ستقوم بتسجيل معدل نبضات قلبك، وإرسال إيميل لطبيبك الخاص، كما ستقوم أريكتك (الكنباية تاعت حضرة جنابك) بإخبارك بموعد حاجتك للوقوف، والقيام ببعض التمارين.

#### A frightening future مستقبل مخيف

Many people are excited about the 'Internet of Things'. For <u>them</u>, a dream is coming true. They say that our lives will be easier and more comfortable. However, **others** are not so sure. They want to keep control of their own lives and their own things. In addition, **they wonder what would happen if criminals managed to access their passwords and security settings.** The dream could easily become a nightmare! كثير من الناس يشعرون بالمتعة بسبب إنترنت الأشياء، فبالنسبة لهم قد أصبح الحلم حقيقة، حيث يقولون بأن حياتهم

ستكون أكثر سهولة وراحة، وعلى أية حال، فإن آخرين غير متأكدين جداً من هذا الأمر، ويريدون أن يسيطروا ويتحكموا بحياتهم ومقتنياتهم الخاصة، وإضافة إلى ذلك، فإنهم يتساءلون متعجبين عما يفعلونه في حال اختراق مجرمي التكنولوجيا ووصولهم لكلمات سرّهم وضبط حماية أجهزة حواسيبهم، عندها يصبح الحلم كابوساً!



-83 -

الفصل الأول

### QUESTIONS

1. What do the underlined pronouns refer to?
2. Find a word in the text that means <b>"to find information, especially on a computer".</b>
3. What does the 'Internet of Things' mean? Give an example from the text. (WB;p.8)
4. How will the 'Internet of Things' help you to keep fit, according to the text? ( <b>WB</b> , <b>p.8</b> )
5. What does the word <b>'others'</b> in <b>bold</b> in the third paragraph refer to? ( <b>WB</b> , <b>p.8</b> )
6. According to the text, why are some people excited about the future? Why are others worried? ( <b>WB</b> , <b>p.8</b> )
7. Technology can keep us fit. Think of this statement and write your point of view.
<ul> <li>8. Circle the correct words. (WB; p.8)</li> <li>1. The article is about how the Internet has developed / is developing.</li> <li>2. The writer says what he thinks / gives different opinions.</li> </ul>
9. Quote the sentence which indicates that the Internet also connects things not only people.
10. What does <b>'sat nav'</b> stand for?
<ul> <li>12. Sofa is a piece of furniture. TRUE FALSE</li> <li>13. What are the future predictions regarding fridges, windows and watches?</li> </ul>
14. What does the bold structure "they wonder what would happen if criminals managed to access their passwords and security settings." represent in grammar?
15. Find a word in the text which means <b>"a terrifying or unpleasant dream".</b> <u>مهارى</u>
16. Online criminals (Techno-criminals) try to get access to two items (TARGETS). Write down these two items.
17. According to the text, how can you tell that the word <b>'everyone'</b> is singular?
<u>ثائر النمورة</u> - 84- الفصل الأول

18. Overusing technologies is not recommended. Explain this statement, suggesting **three** ways for using them in a correct way.

19. Find a linking word (linker), in the second paragraph, which has a similar meaning to "As a result".

20. Find a word in the first paragraph which has the same meaning as 'speak to'. (WB; p.8)

\_\_\_\_\_

21. Read the quotation. Do you agree with it? Why / Why not? "Technology is just a tool. In terms of getting the kids working together and motivating them, the teacher is the most important." Bill Gates (1955 CE) التكنولوجيا مجرد أداة، ويبقى المعلم العنصر الأهم في تحفيز الأطفال وتشجيعهم على العمل معاً.

#### A suggested answer:

I agree. Bill Gates refers to technology as a 'tool' in this quotation because he is emphasising that it is a useful and effective way of involving children. However, in terms of actually making sure children learn, or of ensuring children's social development, teachers cannot be replaced. They are the most important contributors to a person's education, but of course they can use technology to help.

### **MODEL ANSWERS**

#### 1. - it (1): the Internet - it (2): milk - them: Many people

#### 2. access

3. It means the connections between different computers. Examples from the text are TV downloads and sat nav.

4. The sofa will tell you when to get some exercises.

5. other people with a different opinion

6. Some people are excited because they think their lives will be made easier and more comfortable. Others are worried because they want to keep control of their own lives and their own things.

7. **Smartphone apps** can be used to monitor how much exercise you do. Apps can track your workout time, heart rate and how many calories you burn. Interactive video games can also be used to help us to keep fit. They are used indoors and provide a healthy, active alternative to watching television.

8. 1- is developing 2. gives different opinions

9. Everyone knows that the Internet connects people, but now it does more than that - it connects objects, too.

-85 -

10. satellite navigation system

الفصل الأول



11. Computers will increasingly run our lives for us.

12. TRUE

13. - Your fridge will know when you need more milk and add it to your online shopping list.

- Your windows will close if it is likely to rain.

- Your watch will record your heart rate and email your doctor.

14. second conditional (If clause - type 2)

15. nightmare

16. \* passwords \* security settings

17. I can know this because of **the subject-verb agreement** (the addition of 's' to the simple present tense '<u>knows</u>').

18. Technology is a two-headed weapon, so we should manage to use it properly by:

- using our mental skills as much as possible;

- raising awareness in the community about this;

- enriching our curricula (in education) with more practice which depends on the human factor.

19. As a consequence

20. communicate





القصل الأول

النموره

#### Module 2

#### A healthy Life

Unit 2

# Complementary medicine: is it really a solution? الطب البديل: هل هو حقاً حل ؟

1       acupuncture       a system of complementary medicine in which fine needles are inserted in the skin at specific points.         2       ailment       illness       مرض         3       allergy       a reaction of the immune system when it is sensitive to something; this reaction comes in the form of sneezing, itchy eyes or a skin rash       (,,,,,,,	No.	Words	Meanings (E)	Meanings (A)
are inserted in the skin at specific points.       مرض         2       ailment       illness         3       allergy       a reaction of the immune system when it is sensitive to something; this reaction comes in the form of sneezing, itchy eyes or a skin rash       (,)         4       antibody       a substance produced by the body to fight disease      ,)         5       arthritis       a disease causing painful inflammation and stiffness of the joints      ,)         6       complementary medical treatment which provides an alternative to scientific medical practices      ,)         7       conventional       having been used for a long time and is considered usual      ,)         8       herbal remedy       an extract or mixture of a plant used to prevent, alleviate, or cure disease      , and other natural substances         9       homoeopathy       a system of complementary medicine in which illnesses are treated by minute doses of herbs and other natural substances      , and other natural substances         10       immunisation       the process by which an individual's immune system becomes protected against an idlness      , and other natural substances         11       malaria       a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes      , and,	1	acupuncture		
2       ailment       illness       مرض         3       allergy       a reaction of the immune system when it is sensitive to something; this reaction comes in the form of sneezing, itchy eyes or a skin rash       قرض)         4       antibody       a substance produced by the body to fight disease       قرض)         5       arthritis       a disease causing painful inflammation and stiffness of the joints       قائف الله الله الله الله الله الله الله الل				
2       ailment       illness       مرض         3       allergy       a reaction of the immune system when it is sensitive to something; this reaction comes in the form of sneezing, itchy eyes or a skin rash       قرار المرض)         4       antibody       a substance produced by the body to fight disease       قرار المرض)         5       arthritis       a disease causing painful inflammation and stiffness of the joints       قرار المرض)         6       complementary medical treatment which provides an alternative to scientific medical practices       قرار المرفي)         7       conventional       having been used for a long time and is considered usual       (albed prevent, alleviate, or cure disease         9       homoeopathy       a system of complementary medicine in which illnesses are treated by minute doses of herbs and other natural substances       and other natural substances         10       immunisation       the process by which an individual's immune system becomes protected against an illness       a diagerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes         11       malaria       a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes       a diagerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes				بالإبر
3       allergy       a reaction of the immune system when it is sensitive to something; this reaction comes in the form of sneezing, itchy eyes or a skin rash       قى المحكم المح				
ساسیة       when it is sensitive to something; this reaction comes in the form of sneezing, itchy eyes or a skin rash       قدام الأمري         4       antibody       a substance produced by the body to fight disease       قدام الأمري         5       arthritis       a disease causing painful inflammation and stiffness of the joints       قدام الأمري         6       complementary medicine       medical treatment which provides an alternative to scientific medical practices       قدام اليولي         7       conventional       having been used for a long time and is considered usual       قدام اليولي         8       herbal remedy       an extract or mixture of a plant used to prevent, alleviate, or cure disease       قدام الولي         9       homoeopathy       a system of complementary medicine in which illnesses are treated by minute doses of herbs and other natural substances       قدام الأولي         10       immunisation       the process by which an individual's immune system becomes protected against an illness       قدام الأولي         11       malaria       a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes       إلى الأدم ال				مرض
4       antibody       a substance produced by the body to fight disease       ((مرض))         4       antibody       a substance produced by the body to fight disease       ((مرض))         5       arthritis       a disease causing painful inflammation and stiffness of the joints       ((add))         6       complementary medical treatment which provides an alternative to scientific medical practices       ((add))         7       conventional       having been used for a long time and is considered usual       ((add))         8       herbal remedy       an extract or mixture of a plant used to prevent, alleviate, or cure disease       ((add))         9       homoeopathy       a system of complementary medicine in which illnesses are treated by minute doses of herbs and other natural substances       (add) and other natural substances         10       immunisation       the process by which an individual's immune system becomes protected against an illness       (add) and and and and a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes         11       malaria       a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes       (add) and and and and sub mosquitoes	3	allergy		<b>e</b> y _
4       antibody       a substance produced by the body to fight disease         5       arthritis       a disease causing painful inflammation and stiffness of the joints         6       complementary medical treatment which provides an alternative to scientific medical practices         7       conventional         8       herbal remedy         9       homoeopathy         a system of complementary medicine in which illnesses are treated by minute doses of herbs and other natural substances         10       immunisation         10       immunisation         11       malaria         a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes         11       malaria				حساسيه
4       antibody       a substance produced by the body to fight disease         5       arthritis       a disease causing painful inflammation and stiffness of the joints         6       complementary medical treatment which provides an alternative to scientific medical practices         7       conventional         8       herbal remedy         9       homocopathy         a system of complementary medicine in which illnesses are treated by minute doses of herbs and other natural substances         10       immunisation         10       immunisation         11       malaria         a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes         11       malaria				(مرض)
4       antibody       a substance produced by the body to fight disease       مصاد         5       arthritis       a disease causing painful inflammation and stiffness of the joints       لاتهاب مفاصل         6       complementary medicine       medical treatment which provides an alternative to scientific medical practices       disease         7       conventional       having been used for a long time and is considered usual       tell         8       herbal remedy       an extract or mixture of a plant used to prevent, alleviate, or cure disease       used to prevent, alleviate, or cure disease         9       homoeopathy       a system of complementary medicine in which illnesses are treated by minute doses of herbs and other natural substances       and other natural substances         10       immunisation       the process by which an individual's immune system becomes protected against an illness       a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes         11       malaria       a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes       utilitary if the process				
5       arthritis       a disease causing painful inflammation and stiffness of the joints         6       complementary medicine       medical treatment which provides an alternative to scientific medical practices         7       conventional       having been used for a long time and is considered usual         8       herbal remedy       an extract or mixture of a plant used to prevent, alleviate, or cure disease         9       homoeopathy       a system of complementary medicine in which illnesses are treated by minute doses of herbs and other natural substances         10       immunisation       the process by which an individual's immune system becomes protected against an illness         11       malaria       a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes			rash	
5       arthritis       a disease causing painful inflammation and stiffness of the joints         6       complementary medicine       medical treatment which provides an alternative to scientific medical practices         7       conventional       having been used for a long time and is considered usual         8       herbal remedy       an extract or mixture of a plant used to prevent, alleviate, or cure disease         9       homoeopathy       a system of complementary medicine in which illnesses are treated by minute doses of herbs and other natural substances         10       immunisation       the process by which an individual's immune system becomes protected against an illness         11       malaria       a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes				
5       arthritis       a disease causing painful inflammation and stiffness of the joints       التهاب مفاصل inflammation and stiffness of the joints         6       complementary medicine       medical treatment which provides an alternative to scientific medical practices       ليليب inflammation and stiffness of the provides an alternative to scientific medical practices         7       conventional       having been used for a long time and is considered usual       item (uite)         8       herbal remedy       an extract or mixture of a plant used to prevent, alleviate, or cure disease       item (uite)         9       homoeopathy       a system of complementary medicine in which illnesses are treated by minute doses of herbs and other natural substances         10       immunisation       the process by which an individual's immune system becomes protected against an illness         11       malaria       a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes       jb/ mosquitoes	4	antibody		جسم مضاد
inflammation and stiffness of the joints       inflammation and stiffness of the joints         6       complementary medical treatment which provides an alternative to scientific medical practices       inflammation and stiffness of the joints         7       conventional       having been used for a long time and is considered usual       inflammation         8       herbal remedy       an extract or mixture of a plant used to prevent, alleviate, or cure disease       inflammation         9       homoeopathy       a system of complementary medicine in which illnesses are treated by minute doses of herbs and other natural substances       individual's immune system becomes protected against an individual's immune system becomes protected against an illness         11       malaria       a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes       individual's immune system	_	(1 • / •		* 12 1.01
inits       joints         6       complementary medical treatment which provides an alternative to scientific medical practices         7       conventional         having been used for a long time and is considered usual       (مائوف)         8       herbal remedy       an extract or mixture of a plant used to prevent, alleviate, or cure disease         9       homoeopathy       a system of complementary medicine in which illnesses are treated by minute doses of herbs and other natural substances         10       immunisation       the process by which an individual's immune system becomes protected against an illness         11       malaria       a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes	5	arthritis	<b>.</b>	التهاب مقاصل
6       complementary medicine       medical treatment which provides an alternative to scientific medical practices       identification         7       conventional       having been used for a long time and is considered usual       identification         8       herbal remedy       an extract or mixture of a plant used to prevent, alleviate, or cure disease       identification         9       homoeopathy       a system of complementary medicine in which illnesses are treated by minute doses of herbs and other natural substances       identification         10       immunisation       the process by which an individual's immune system becomes protected against an illness       identification         11       malaria       a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes       identification				
medicineprovides an alternative to scientific medical practices7conventionalhaving been used for a long time and is considered usualفالنفرية8herbal remedyan extract or mixture of a plant used to prevent, alleviate, or cure diseaseبالأعشاب9homoeopathya system of complementary medicine in which illnesses are treated by minute doses of herbs and other natural substancesقائل العلاج المثلية10immunisationthe process by which an individual's immune system becomes protected against an illnessنام الملازي11malariaa dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoesليفريز النموذي	(			t ti tati
scientific medical practices         7       conventional         having been used for a long time and is considered usual       شائع         8       herbal remedy       an extract or mixture of a plant used to prevent, alleviate, or cure disease       بالأعشاب         9       homoeopathy       a system of complementary medicine in which illnesses are treated by minute doses of herbs and other natural substances       المعالجة المثلية         10       immunisation       the process by which an individual's immune system becomes protected against an illness       ي         11       malaria       a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes       ي	0			الطب البدين
7       conventional       having been used for a long time and is considered usual       قال العلاج المثلوف)         8       herbal remedy       an extract or mixture of a plant used to prevent, alleviate, or cure disease       Ital         9       homoeopathy       a system of complementary medicine in which illnesses are treated by minute doses of herbs and other natural substances       Ital         10       immunisation       the process by which an individual's immune system becomes protected against an illness       Ital         11       malaria       a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes       Ital		medicine	-	
used to prevent, alleviate, or cure disease         9       homoeopathy         a system of complementary medicine in which illnesses are treated by minute doses of herbs and other natural substances         10       immunisation         the process by which an individual's immune system becomes protected against an illness         11       malaria         a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes	7	conventional		2.1.2
used to prevent, alleviate, or cure disease         9       homoeopathy         a system of complementary medicine in which illnesses are treated by minute doses of herbs and other natural substances         10       immunisation         the process by which an individual's immune system becomes protected against an illness         11       malaria         a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes	/	conventional	8	(مأله ف)
used to prevent, alleviate, or cure disease         9       homoeopathy         a system of complementary medicine in which illnesses are treated by minute doses of herbs and other natural substances         10       immunisation         the process by which an individual's immune system becomes protected against an illness         11       malaria         a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes	8	herhal remedy		العلاج بالأعشاب
9       homoeopathy       a system of complementary medicine in which illnesses are treated by minute doses of herbs and other natural substances         10       immunisation       the process by which an individual's immune system becomes protected against an illness         11       malaria       a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes	U	ner bar remedy	-	÷;
9       homoeopathy       a system of complementary medicine in which illnesses are treated by minute doses of herbs and other natural substances         10       immunisation       the process by which an individual's immune system becomes protected against an illness         11       malaria       a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes				
Interformation       Interformation of compression of c	9	homoeopathy		
Industrialtreated by minute doses of herbs and other natural substancesالمعالجة المثليّة10immunisationthe process by which an individual's immune system becomes protected against an illnessن11malariaa dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoesي11malariaition				
and other natural substances10immunisationthe process by which an individual's immune system becomes protected against an illness11malariaa dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoesمرض الملاريا				المعالجة المثليّة
individual's immune system becomes protected against an illness 11 malaria a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes يثان النمورية			•	
individual's immune system becomes protected against an illness 11 malaria a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes تثان النمورة	10	immunisation	the process by which an	
illness       11     malaria     a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes       نثان النمورة     الفصل الأول				
illness       11     malaria     a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes       نثان النمورة     الفصل الأول			becomes protected against an	تحصين
مرض الملاريا في النمورية by mosquitoes الفصل الأول				
ثائر الثمورة الفصل الأول	11	malaria	a dangerous disease transmitted	
<u>ثائر النمورة <sub>87</sub> الفصل الأول</u>			by mosquitoes	مرض الملاريا
		الفصل الأول	ثائر النمورة	

12	migraine	a very bad headache which often comes with a feeling of sickness and problems with vision	الصداع النصفي (الشقيقة)
13	option	something that is or may be chosen	خيار
14	practitioner	someone who is qualified or registered to practise a particular occupation or profession	ممارس (مزاول)
15	sceptical	having doubts ; not easily convinced	مرتاب (متشكك)
16	viable	effective and able to be successful	فعّال

# Complementary medicine: is it really a solution? الطب البديل: هل هو حقاً حل ؟

Most doctors **used to be** sceptical about the validity of homoeopathy, acupuncture and other forms of **complementary medicine**. If patients wanted to receive this kind of non-conventional treatment, **they** used to have to consult a private practitioner **who** was **likely** not to have a medical degree. However, **in recent years**, the perception of this type of treatment <u>has changed</u>. **These days**, many family doctors **study** complementary medicine alongside conventional treatments, and many complementary medicine consultants also have **medical degrees**.

قد كان معظم الأطباء متخوفين (مرتابين) بخصوص فعالية وصلاحية كل من المعالجة المثلية و الوخز بالإبر وغير ذلك من أنواع الطب البديل. وإذا ما أراد المرضى الحصول على هذا العلاج غير المألوف فإن عليهم أن يستشيروا من مارس الأمر، ولربما لا يحمل درجة في الطب. على أية حال، وفي السنوات الأخيرة، فإن إدراك وفهم هذا النوع من المعالجة قد تغيّر، أما في هذه الأيام، فإن معظم أطباء العائلات يدرسون الطب البديل إلى جانب الطب التقليدي المألوف، كما أن العديد من مستشاري الطب البديل يحملون درجات في الطب.

Whereas critics **used to say** that there was no scientific evidence that non-conventional treatments actually worked, now it is more common for **medical experts** to recognise that conventional **medicine** may not always be the only way to treat an <u>ailment</u>.

بينما اعتدنا على النقاد أن يقولوا بعدم وجود دليل علمي على أن العلاجات غير المألوفة لها فعالية إلا أنه قد شاع الآن عند خبراء الطب الاعتراف بأن الطب المألوف ليس دوماً السبيل الوحيد لعلاج مرض ما.

الفصل الأول

ثائر النمورة

At a surgery in London, 70 per cent of patients who were offered the choice between a herbal or a conventional medicine for common complaints such as insomnia, arthritis and migraines chose the herbal remedy. Fifty per cent of patients then said that the treatment helped. One doctor said, "I now consider homoeopathy to be a viable option for many different conditions, including anxiety, depression and certain allergies. It provides another conventional medicine when does not address option the problem adequately." وفي عيادة في لندن، فإن 70% من المرضى الذين تم تخيير هم بين الدواء بالأعشاب والدواء التقليدي المعر وف لأمر اض

شائَعة مثل: الأرق، والتهاب المفاصل، والشقيقة (الصداع النصفي) قد اختاروا العلاج بالأعشاب، كما أن 50% من هؤلاء المرضى قالوا بأنهم استفادوا من العلاج. قال أحد الأطباء: " الأن أعتبر المعالجة المثلية خياراً حيوياً للعديد من الحالات بما فيها القلق، والاكتئاب، وحساسيات محددة. كما أنها تؤمننا بخيار آخر عندما لا يُجدي الطب المألوف والمعروف.

**However,** complementary medicine **cannot** be used for all medical treatments. <u>It</u> can never substitute for immunisations as it will not produce the antibodies needed to protect against childhood diseases. It also cannot be used to protect against malaria.

على أية حال، فإن الطب البديل لا يمكن استخدامة لعلاج كل الأمر اض، فهو لا يمكن أن يحل محل التحصينات ، لأنّه لا يمكن أن ينتج أجساماً مضادة والتي يُحتاج إليها للوقاية من أمر اض الطفولة، كما أنه لا يفيد في الوقاية من مرض الملاريا.

One doctor said, "I will always turn to conventional medical treatment first to ensure that no underlying condition is missed. However, the idea of complementary treatments is no longer an alien concept. In my opinion, **it** should work alongside modern medicine, and not against **it**."

قال أحد الأطباء: " سأعود دائماً للعلاج الطبي التقليدي (المألوف) أو لاً لضمان أنه لا يوجد أمر خفي، وعلى أية حال، فإن فكرة العلاج بالطب البديل لم يعد مفهوماً غريباً بعد الآن، ومن وجهة نظري، فإن الطب البديل لا بد أن يُجمع بينه وبين الطب الحديث من غير تضاد بينهما.

#### QUESTIONS

#### 1. Decide if these sentences are true or false. Correct the false sentences. (SB; p.15)

**1-** Doctors and patients didn't use to be convinced that complementary forms of medicine work. ( )

2- Nowadays, many doctors study complementary forms of treatment. (

**3-** At the surgery mentioned in the article, the majority of patients found that the herbal remedy did not help them. ( )

**4-** Complementary medicine can work as a replacement for immunisations or to treat malaria. ( )

الفصل الأول



-89 -

2. What do the underlined words (pronouns) refer to?

3. Find a word in the text which means "effective and able to be successful".

4. The writer mentions two **forms** of complementary medicine. Write down these two forms.

5. Describe how patients used to get non-conventional treatments in the past.

6. The perception of complementary medicine has stayed the same – there is no				
difference between the past and the present.	True	False		

7. What do family doctors do regarding complementary medicine at these days?

-----

8. Group the following words in two categories: (SB, p.14)(1. health treatments2. illnesses or medical conditions)

acupuncture, ailment , allergy , arthritis , herbal remedy , homoeopathy , immunisation , malaria , migraine

9. The article suggests that people's perception of complementary medicine has changed over time. Why do you **think** this is the case? (SB, p.15)

10. "Complementary treatments ... should work alongside modern medicine, not against it." Explain this statement in two sentences, justifying your answer with examples from the article.

11. In the past, critics thought that there was no proof for the effectiveness of complementary medicine. What is the current case?

\_\_\_\_\_

12. What does the underlined word "ailment" mean?

**13.** What is the part of speech (derivative) of the word "**medical**" in the text?

\_\_\_\_\_

14. The writer mentions three common complaints in London could be treated by herbal remedies. What are these complaints?

-90 -

15. Two percentages are mentioned in the text. What are they?





16. The writer states that homoeopathy could be an effective alternative to many different conditions. Write down these conditions.

17. **Quote** the sentence which indicates that homoeopathy is a possible solution when the conventional treatment doesn't work.

18. Why cannot complementary medicine be used for all medical treatments?

19. Turning to conventional medical treatment first is recommended. What is the benefit of this?

20. What is the **register** of the text? What is the writer's point of view? Where can you find it?

#### **MODEL ANSWERS**

- 1. 1- True
   2- True
   3- False. Fifty per cent of patients said it helped.
   4- False. Complementary medicine cannot be used for all medical treatments.
- 2. they  $\rightarrow$  patients who  $\rightarrow$  a private practitioner
- It  $\rightarrow$  complementary medicine
- 3. viable

\_\_\_\_\_.

4. - homoeopathy - acupuncture

5. They used to have to consult a private practitioner who was likely not to have a medical degree.

6. False

Family doctors study complementary medicine alongside conventional treatments.
 8.

health treatments: acupuncture , herbal remedy , homoeopathy , immunisation
 illnesses or medical conditions: ailment , allergy , arthritis , malaria , migraine

- 9. I think people's opinions of complementary medicine might have changed because
- of more information being freely available on the Internet. Additionally, more research may have been done on the effects of complementary medicine.

10. I think that the relation between complementary medicine and modern medicine is **integral** and we cannot only depend on conventional treatments. We are told that 50% of patients said that complementary treatments helped.

11. Now, it is more common for medical experts to recognise that conventional medicine may not always be the only way to treat an ailment.

الفصل الأول

-91 -

تائر النمورة

12. illness

13. an adjective

14. insomnia , arthritis and migraines

15. 70 per cent / fifty per cent

16. anxiety, depression and certain allergies

17. "It provides another option when conventional medicine does not address the problem adequately."

18. Complementary medicine cannot produce antibodies and cannot be used to treat malaria. We really need immunisations to do the task.

19. To ensure that no underlying condition is missed

20. Register: Formal / The writer's opinion: Complementary medicine should work alongside modern medicine, and not against it. / This can be found in the 'conclusion'.

### Vocabulary (WB; pp. 11, 12)

#### Q1: Match the following phrases with the correct <u>meanings</u>. One word is not needed.

acupuncture , homoeopathy , ailment , arthritis immunisation , malaria , allergies , migraine

1. a serious illness that is spread by mosquitoes
2. a disease that causes pain and swelling in joints
3. an illness or disease which is not very serious
4. giving a drug to protect against illness
5. an extremely bad headache
6. a form of complementary medicine which uses thin needles
7. conditions that make you ill when you eat, touch or breathe a particular thing
Answers:
1. malaria 2. arthritis 3. ailment 4. immunisation 5. migraine
6. acupuncture7. allergies
<u>ثائر النمورة</u> - 92- <u>الفصل الأول</u>

#### Q2: Complete the sentences with words from exercise 1. (WB; p. 11)

1. My grandfather has ..... in his fingers, so he sometimes finds it difficult to write.

2. ..... to nuts and milk are becoming more common.

3. Many serious diseases can be prevented by ....., which helps the body to build antibodies.

4. Headaches and colds are common .....s, especially in winter.

5. If you have a ....., the best thing to do is take some medicine and rest somewhere quiet.

#### **Answers:**

1. arthritis 2. Allergies 3. immunisation 4. ailment 5. migraine

#### Q3: Complete the sentences with the words in box. (WB; p.12)

viable, alien, conventional, sceptical, complementary

- 1. I don't really believe that story I'm very ------
- 2. Doctors often treat infections with antibiotics; that is the ----- approach.
- 3. Medicines that are not the normal, traditionally accepted treatments are known as -----.
- 4. Another way of saying that something could be successful is to say it is ------.
- 5. If something seems very strange, we sometimes say it is -----.

#### Answers:



#### Are happier people healthier – and, if so, why?

### هل الناس الأكثر سعادة يتمتعون بالصحة، وإذا كان الأمر كذلك فلماذا؟ 6 – 11 : COLOUR IDIOMS

No.	Words	Meanings (English)	Meanings (A)
1	optimistic	believing that good things will	متفائل
		happen in the future	
2	focus on	to direct your attention or	یرکز علی
		effort at something specific	
3	bounce back	to start to be successful again	يسترد
		after a difficult time	
4	raise (a question)	to bring up a problem or cast	يثير (سؤالاً)
		or doubt on something	
5	setback	a problem that delays or stops	انتكاسة ، نكسة
		progress, or makes a situation	
		worse	
6	feel blue	to feel sad	يشعر بالحزن
7	have the green light	to have or give permission	
		to go ahead with something	يوافق، يعطي
		or for something to happen	الضوء الأخضر
8	out of the blue	apparently from nowhere ;	يوافق، يعطي الضوء الأخضر بشكل غير متوقع
		unexpectedly	(فجأة)
9	red-handed	in the act of doing	متلبس ومتورط
		something wrong	متلبس ومتورط بأمر خطأ
10	see red	to be angry	يغضب
		something that has cost a lot	
11	white elephant	of money but has no useful	شيء مكلف وبلا
	•	purpose	فائدة

### **Prepared by Tha'er Al- Nammoura**

الفصل الأول

ثائر النمورة

-94 -

Are happier people healthier – and, if so, why? هل الناس الأكثر سعادة يتمتعون بالصحة، وإذا كان الأمر كذلك فلماذا؟

It'<u>s</u> normal to **feel a bit blue** <u>from time to time</u>. However, studies show that negative emotions can harm the body.

من الطبيعي أن تشعر بالحزن من وقت لأخر، وعلى أي حال، فقد أظهرت الدر اساّت أن المشاعر السلبية لربما تؤذي جسم الإنسان.

<u>Anger can also have harmful effects on health</u>. When you see red, your blood pressure is raised and you can suffer from headaches, sleep problems and digestive problems. However, what about positive feelings and attitudes? Until recently, scientists had not investigated <u>whether</u> there is a link between positive feelings and good health.

كما أن الغضب له آثار مؤذية على الصحة، فعندما تغضب فإن ضغط الدم يرتفع ولربما تعاني من الصداع ومَشاكل النوم والهضم. وعلى أية حال، ماذا عن المشاعر الإيجابية والمواقف؟ وإلى هذه اللحظة، فإن العلماء لمّا (لم) يبحثوا فيما إذا كان هناك رابط بين المشاعر الإيجابية والصحة الجيدة.

Then, in a study that had followed more than 6,000 men and women aged 25 to 74 for 20 years, researchers found that positivity reduced the risk of heart disease. Other factors influencing health included a supportive network of family and friends, and an optimistic outlook on life.

ومن ثمّ، فإن هناك در اسة تتبّعت ما يزيد عن 6000 رجل وامرأة تتراوح أعمار هم ما بين 25 – 74 لمدة عشرين عاماً، فإن العلماء وجدوا أن (الإيجابية) قد قللت من خطر الإصابة من مرض القلب، وهناك عوامل أخرى تؤثر في الصحة تضمنت وجود رفقة داعمة من العائلة والأصدقاء، ونظرة إيجابية تفاؤلية للحياة.

The research showed that children **who** were more able to stay focused on a task, and who had a more positive attitude to life at age seven, were usually in better health 30 years later.

وقد أشار البحث إلى أن الأطفال الذين كانوا أكثر قدرة على التركيز على مهمة معينة وكانت مواقفهم تجاه الحياة إيجابية في عمر السابعة كانوا عادة بصحة جيدة أكثر في الثلاثين عاماً التالية.

The study has been **controversial**. Some health professionals believe that **bad lifestyle choices**, such as smoking or lack of exercise, are the reason for heart disease and other illnesses, and not an individual's attitude. The researchers, while agreeing, raise the question: why are people **making** bad lifestyle **decisions**? Do more optimistic people **make** better and healthier lifestyle **choices**?

و لا تزال الدراسة محل جدل، فإن بعض المتخصصين المحترفين يعتقدون بأن خيارات أنماط الحياة السيئة مثل التدخين أو قلة التمارين الرياضية هي السبب الرئيسي لأمراض القلب وأمراض أخرى وليس طريقة التفكير ومواقف الإنسان، وقد قام الباحثون أثناء موافقتهم بإثارة السؤال الآتي: لماذا يقوم الناس باتخاذ قرارات سيئة تتعلق بأسلوب الحياة؟ وهل يقوم الأشخاص الأكثر تفاؤلاً بصنع خيارات حياتية أفضل وأكثر صحية.

-95 -



The researchers appreciate that not everyone's personal circumstances and environment make it possible to live without worry. However, <u>they</u> believe that **if we teach children to develop positive thinking, and to 'bounce back' after a setback, these qualities will improve their overall health in the future.** 

ويقدّر الباحثون أنه ليس بإمكان كل إنسان أن يحيا بلا قلق، فلكل ظروفه وبيئته الخاصة، وعلى أية حال، فإنهم يعتقدون أنه لو علمنا الأطفال كيفية تطوير تفكير هم الإيجابي وكيفية استجماع القوة بعد النكسات، فإن هذه الصفات ستحسن من صحتهم الإجمالية في المستقبل.

### **QUESTIONS**

1. What do <b>academic studies</b> show regarding negative <b>emotions</b> ?		
2. What are the possible effects of <b>anger</b> and <b>stress</b> on someone's l	health? (	SB, p. 16)
3. Your <b>blood pressure</b> becomes lower when you get angry.	True	False
4. <b>Replace</b> the word <b>"whether"</b> with another word which has a sin	nilar mea	aning to it.
5. What do the underlined <b>pronouns</b> refer to?		
6. Comment on the relationship between positive feelings and good the most recent research (before the study of the 6,000 people).	l health a	according to
7. What were the findings (results) of the study that had followed m and women for twenty years?	nore than	n 6,000 men
8. What is controversial about the researchers' study? (SB, p. 16)		
9. What are the researchers' recommendations for improving the ov future?	verall hea	alth in the
10. Write the following statement in the <b>passive voice</b> : "Anger car effects on health."	n also ha	we harmful
11. <b>Quote</b> the sentence which <b>indicates</b> that the researchers do not of worry in our life.	ignore tl	he existence
ر النمورة - 96-	<u>ثائر</u>	

12. Being happy is very important in our life. Explain this statement, suggesting three ways for keeping happy. (**Critical Thinking**)

13. Find a word in the text which means "a problem that delays or stops progress, or makes a situation worse".

14. What does the underlined verb **'bounce back'** mean?

15. **Mention** two bad lifestyles which some professionals think that they are the real reason for heart disease and other illnesses.

**MODEL ANSWERS** 

\_\_\_\_\_

1. Studies show that negative emotions can harm the body.

2. They can raise blood pressure and cause headaches, sleep problems and digestive problems, as well as leading to illnesses such as heart disease.

3. False

4. **if** 

5. who  $\rightarrow$  children / they  $\rightarrow$  the researchers

6. Scientists had not investigated whether there is a link between positive feelings and good health. The future may bring many surprises with it.

7. Researchers found that positivity reduced the risk of heart disease. Other factors influencing health included a supportive network of family and friends and an optimistic outlook on life.

8. Many other researchers believe that bad lifestyle choices are responsible for these problems and not an individual's attitude.

9. They recommend that if we teach children to develop positive thinking, and to 'bounce back' after a setback, these qualities will improve their overall health in the future.

#### 10. Harmful effects on health can also be had (by anger).

11. "The researchers appreciate that not everyone's personal circumstances and environment make it possible to live without worry."

12. I think that happiness is needed in our daily life. We can keep happy by many ways, such as: being successful in your job, going on picnics, doing sports. (OPEN ANSWER) 13. setback

-97 -

14. to start to be successful again after a difficult time

15. smoking / lack of exercise

الفصل الأ<u>ول</u>



#### VOCABULARY (SB; p. 17)

- 1. What feeling does each of the idioms in bold from the text refer to? A. happiness B. sadness C. fear D. anger
- 2. What do the following COLOUR IDIOMS in brackets mean?

1- Have you heard the good news? We've got **the green light** to go ahead with our project ! (the green light)

2- Luckily, the police arrived and the thief was caught red-handed. (red-handed)

3- I was shocked when I heard the news. It came completely **out of the blue**. (out of the blue)

4- Nobody goes to the new private sports club. The building is **a white elephant.** (a white elephant)

#### Answers:

- **1-** feel a bit blue (B) / see red (D)
- **2-** 1. permission 2. in the act of doing something wrong 3. unexpectedly
  - 4. a useless possession

أسئلة من المنهاج القديم (السابق) على نفس الموضوع

## Q1: Replace the underlined phrases in these sentences with the correct form of one of the colour idioms.

- 1. When he accused me of being wasteful, I got very angry.
- 2. They've <u>said yes</u> to the building of a new incinerator.
- 3. I heard this morning, **<u>unexpectedly</u>**, that I'd won a writing competition.

Answers: 1. saw red 2. given the green light 3. out of the blue

#### Q2: Complete.

- 1. A. Is that a letter you're reading?
  - B. Yes, it's from an old friend. It came this morning completely ------

2. Have you heard? The government has ----- to the building of a new airport.

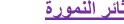
3. A. Calm down.

B. Sorry - someone accused me of being lazy and I just -----.

-98 -

Answers: 1. out of the blue 2. given the green light 3. saw red

القصل الأول



#### Vocabulary (WB; 12 – Ex. 7)

Sentences from (1 - 4) contain incorrect information. Correct them, using phrases in the box. One phrase is not needed.

conventional medicine / produce antibodies children and teenagers better and healthier lifestyle choices suffer from health problems relax / get some exercise

- 1. A good way to cope with **stress** is to work extra hard. No, it isn't. You should .....
- 2. **Complementary medicine** can be used to **immunise** people. No, it can't. You can immunise yourself using .....
- 3. **Optimistic** people make bad lifestyle choices. No, they don't. They make .....
- 4. **Seeing red** has positive effects on your health. No, it doesn't. You often .....

#### **Answers:**

- 1. No, it isn't. You should try to relax and get some exercise.
- 2. No, it can't. You can immunise yourself using conventional medicine because it produces (the necessary antibodies).

-99 -

- 3. No, they don't. They make better and healthier lifestyle choices.
- 4. No, it doesn't. You often suffer from health problems (if you get angry).



التموره

#### Health in Jordan: A report الصحة في الأردن: تقرير

No.	Words	Meanings (E)	Meanings (A)
1	commitment	A promise to do something or to behave in a particular way	تعهد (التزام)
2	healthcare	The prevention or treatment of illness by doctors, dentists, psychologists, etc.	الرعاية الصحية (العلاج)
3	reputation	The common opinion that people have about something or someone	سمعة
4	life expectancy	the length of time that a person or animal is expected to live	العمر الافتراضي
5	mortality	Death, especially on a large scale (e.g. infant mortality); the rate of deaths that occur (mortality rate)	معدل الوفيات
6	decline	To decrease in quantity or importance	ينحدر (يقل)
7	sanitation	The systems which supply water and deal with human waste	نظام الصرف الصحي
8	dental	relating to teeth	له علاقة بالأسنان
9	infant mortality	Deaths amongst babies or very young children	معدل وفيات الأطفال أو صغار السن
10	work force	The people who are able to work	القوة العاملة

#### مقدمة Introduction

الفصل الأول

Health conditions in Jordan are **among** the best in the **M**iddle **E**ast. This is largely due to the country's commitment to making healthcare for all a top priority. Advances in education, economic conditions, **sanitation**, clean water, diet and housing have made our community healthier.

ويعد الأردن من أفضل الدول في مجال الطب بين دول الشرق الأوسط، ويعود سبب ذلك إلى التزام الدولة و عزمها على جعل الرعاية الصحية لجميع المواطنين على رأس الأولويات، كما أن التقدم في مجال التعليم والاقتصاد والصحة العامة والمياه النظيفة والحمية الغذائية والإسكان قد جعل من مجتمعنا مجتمعاً أكثر صحية.

ثائر النمورة

-100 -

A: .....

As a result of careful planning, the number of healthcare services <u>has been increasing</u> rapidly over the past years. More than 800 different kinds of healthcare centres have been built, as well as 188 **dental** clinics. In 2012 CE, 98 per cent of Jordanian children were fully immunised, thanks to **immunisation** teams that <u>had been working</u> towards this goal for several years.

ونتيجة للتخطيط الدقيق فإن عدد الخدمات الصحية المقدمة في تزايد مستمر وسريع خلال السنوات الماضية، وأكثر من 800 نوع مختلف من المراكز الصحية تم بناؤه بالإضافة إلى 188 عيادة أسنان. وفي عام 2012 فإن 98 % من الأطفال الأر دنيين كانوا محصنين ضد الأمر اض بشكل كامل، فكل الشكر لأفرقة التحصينات التي قد عملت لتحقيق هذا الهدف لأعوام عدة.

Although there were **remote** areas of the country <u>where</u> people had been without consistent access to electricity and safe water, almost 99 per cent of the country's population now has access.

و على الرغم من وجود مناطق نائية (بعيدة) في الدولة حيث يعاني سكانها من عدم استمر ارية وجود التيار الكهربائي والمياه الصالحة للشرب والاستخدام فإن 99% تقريباً من سكان المملكة ينعمون بالكهرباء والماء المطلوبين.

**B:** .....

Although the country has been focusing mainly on improving <u>its</u> primary healthcare facilities, it has not neglected its advanced **medical facilities**. The **reputation** of Jordanian doctors has spread in the region, and now many more patients come to Jordan for **open heart surgery**. In Jordan, the open heart surgery programme started in 1970 CE in Amman.

وعلى الرغم من أن الدولة لازلت تركز بشكل رئيسي على تحسين المرافق الصحية الرئيسية إلا أنها لم تهمل الخدمات الطبية المتقدمة. كما أن سمعة الأطباء الأردنيين قد انتشرت في المنطقة ، وفي الوقت الحاضر ، فإن كثيراً من المرضى يأتون إلى الأردن لعمليات القلب المفتوح، حيث بدأت عمليات القلب المفتوح في عمان العاصمة الأردنية عام 1970 م.

#### C: .....

The life expectancy figures show that Jordan's healthcare system is successful. In 1965 CE, the average Jordanian's life expectancy was age 50. In 2012 CE, this average life expectancy had risen to 73.5.

According to UNICEF statistics, between 1981 CE and 1991 CE, Jordan's **infant mortality** rates declined more rapidly than anywhere else in the world – from 70 deaths per 1,000 births in 1981 CE to only 32 deaths per 1,000 births in 2014 CE.

وقد أشارت أرقام متوسط الأعمار بأن نظام الرعاية الصحية في الأردن ناجح، ففي عام 1965 كان متوسط عمر المواطن الأردني 50 عاماً ، وفي عام 2012 ارتفع ليصل إلى 73.5 . وتبعاً لإحصائيات اليونيسيف فإن معدل وفيات الأطفال قد انحدرت بسرعة تفوق كل دول العالم وذلك من 70 حالة وفاة من كل 1000 مولود عام 1981 إلى 32 حالة وفاة فقط من كل 1000 مولود عام 2014 .

-101 -



#### خاتمة Conclusion

The low infant mortality rate, as well as the excellent healthcare system, have been contributing factors to Jordan's healthy population growth, <u>which</u> will result in a strong **work force** with economic benefits for the <u>whole</u> country.

إن تدني معدل وفيات المواليد والنظام الصّحي الجيد قد ساهم في نمو السكان الذين ينعمون بصحة جيدة، الأمر الذي سيؤدي إلى وجود قوى عاملة تعود بالنفع على الدولة بأكملها.

## **QUESTIONS**

1. What do the underlined	pronouns refer to?	
2. Find a word in the text the	nat means <b>"to decre</b>	ease in quantity or importance".
3. Match the sub-headings 1. Life expectancy	· ,	ons (A-C) in the report. (SB; p.18) 3. Healthcare centres
4. What does the word <b>"Sa</b>	nitation" in the	text mean?
5. What is the title of the re	eport? ( <b>SB; p.18</b> )	
6. What is the purpose of the	ne sub-headings bef	ore different sections? (SB; p.18)
7. What is the link between	the introduction an	d the conclusion? (SB; p.18)
8. Is the language <b>formal</b> of	or <b>informal</b> ? How c	an you tell? (SB; p.18)
9. Quote the sentence whic healthcare.	h indicates the real	status of Jordan in the region regarding
10. What is the reason behi	nd the advancemen	ts of Jordan in health conditions?
11. What are the factors wh	nich have made our	community healthier?
12. Why has the number of years? <b>Describe this consi</b>		been increasing rapidly over the past
13. Who were responsible	for the success in in	nmunisations in 2012 CE?
صل الأول	الفد	ثائر النمورة

-102 -

14. What is the current percentage of the **consistent** accessibility for electricity and safe water in Jordan?

15. Write down the sentence which indicates the time and the place of the first open heart surgery programme in Jordan.

16. How can you tell that the reputation of Jordanian physicians has spread in the region?

17. Quote the sentence which indicates the balance of development in Jordan regarding health affairs.

18. Jordan's healthcare system is remarkable if we consider the life expectancy figures. Justify this statement.

-----

19. Comment on the Jordan's infant mortality rates according to UNICEF statistics.

20. Replace the underlined word **'whole'** with a more formal one.

-----

**21.** Jordan's healthy population growth is ascribed to two factors. Write them down.

22. What will this growth lead to?

------

23. (RESEARCH BOX) : What illnesses are children in Jordan vaccinated against?

24. "He who has health has hope; and he who has hope, has everything." (SB; p.19) Thomas Carlyle (1795 CE – 1881 CE)

" من يتمتع بالصحة يحدوه الأمل، ومن يحدوه الأمل يمتلك كل شيء ." (( ترجمة الوزارة ألمعتمدة))

\_\_\_\_\_

Explain the above quotation.

### **MODEL ANSWERS**

-103 -

- 1. where  $\rightarrow$  remote areas of the country / its  $\rightarrow$  the country
- which  $\rightarrow$  Jordan's healthy population growth
- 2. decline
- 3. 1- C 2- B 3- A
- 4. the systems which supply water and deal with human waste
- 5. Health in Jordan: A report

الفصل الأول

ثائر النمورة

6. They tell the reader what the section will be about. If the report is very long, they are very useful in helping the reader to find particular pieces of information and making the text easier to read.

7. 'Health conditions are among the best in the Middle East' and 'Advances ... have made our community healthier' links with 'excellent healthcare system' and 'contributing factors to Jordan's healthy population growth'.

8. The language is **formal**. There are **no contractions**; the **sentences** are quite **long**, with **relative pronouns**, etc. ; the **vocabulary** is formal; there are **linking expressions** such as *As a result of, According to and Although*; the **statistics** included add to the formality. (We call this thing **REGISTER**.)

9. Health conditions in Jordan are among the best in the Middle East.

10. This is largely due to the country's commitment to making healthcare for all a top priority.

11. Advances in education, economic conditions, sanitation, clean water, diet and housing have made our community healthier.

12. Because of careful planning. More than 800 different kinds of healthcare centres have been built, as well as 188 dental clinics.

13. immunisation teams

14. Almost 99 per cent of the country's population now has access.

15. "In Jordan, the open heart surgery programme started in 1970 CE in Amman."

16. Now, many more patients come to Jordan for open heart surgery.

17. Although the country has been focusing mainly on improving its primary healthcare facilities, it has not neglected its advanced medical facilities.

18. In 1965 CE, the average Jordanian's life expectancy was age 50. In 2012 CE, this average life expectancy had risen to 73.5.

19. Between 1981 CE and 1991 CE, Jordan's infant mortality rates declined more rapidly than anywhere else in the world – from 70 deaths per 1,000 births in 1981 CE to only 32 deaths per 1,000 births in 2014 CE.

#### 20. <u>entire</u>

21. \* the low infant mortality rate \* the excellent healthcare system

22. It will lead to a strong work force with economic benefits for the whole country.

23. Children should have been vaccinated against Diphtheria, Measles, Tetanus, ... etc in early childhood. Later they should have been vaccinated against Varicella... etc. 24. The quotation is stressing the importance of health through emphasizing that it is

24. The quotation is stressing the importance of health through emphasizing that it is possible to feel optimistic about the future when one is healthy.

Hope for the future and a positive attitude are seen as, overall, the most important things in life.

-104 -



### Get moving! التحرّك

No.	Words	Meanings (E)	Meanings (A)
1	obese	extremely fat, in a way	عنده سمنة مفرطة
		that is dangerous to	
		your health	
2	strenuous	using or needing a lot	مجهد
		of effort	
3	cope with	to deal successfully with,	يتعامل مع
	-	or handle , a situation	

#### A: -----

In many countries, an increasing number of young people and adults are overweight or even obese. One reason for this is the growing popularity of fast food, <u>which</u> didn't use to be as common as it is now. Another big factor is lack of exercise. People would often walk to school or work, but these days many more of us drive. Modern technology has also played <u>its</u> part; we spend more and more time focusing on computer screens. Before the Internet was invented, nobody had dreamt of online shopping, but now we can buy almost anything without leaving the sofa.

في العديد من الدول يوجد عدد متزايد من الشباب اليافعين والبالغين يعانون من الوزن الزائد وحتى من السمنة. وأحد الأسباب هو الشعبية المتزايدة والانتشار الواسع للأطعمة سريعة التحضير التي لم تكن معروفة قديما ً بهذا الشكل، ومن العوامل الرئيسة أيضاً قلة التمارين، وقد كان الناس معتادين غالباً على المشي إلى المدرسة أو العمل، أما هذه الأيام فإن أكثرنا يذهب راكباً. كما أن التقنيات الحديثة قد لعبت دور ها، فإننا نقضي كثيراً من الوقت مركزين أمام شاشات الحواسيب، وقبل أن يتم اختراع الإنترنت لم يحلم أحد من الناس بالتسوق الإلكتروني، ولكننا الآن نستطيع شراء أي شيء ونحن على أريكتنا.

#### B: -----

Health experts **have been warning** about this trend **for** years, and <u>their</u> **advice** is clear. Adults **should aim** to exercise for at least two and a half hours every week; for children and teenagers the target **should be** at least an hour a day. This might not sound very much. However, recent research shows that less than 50% of the British population manages this. **School children are less physically active than they used to be.** Girls in particular **often dislike** PE. This can lead to serious health problems.

ولا يزال خبراء الصحة يحذرون من هذا التوجه أيما تحذير لعدة سنوات، ونصيحتهم واضحة ، فإن على البالغين أن يهدفوا إلى التدرب لما لا يقل عن ساعتين ونصف كل أسبوع، أما الأطفال والمراهقين فإن عليهم التدرب لما لا يقل عن ساعة واحدة يومياً، ولربما الواقع بخلاف ذلك، وعلى أية حال، فإن الأبحاث الحديثة قد أظهرت بأن أقل من 50 % من السكان البريطانيين يطبقون ذلك، حيث أن طلاب المدارس أقل لياقة ونشاطاً مما كانوا عليه قديماً. كما أن البنات - على وجه الخصوص - لا يحبون الرياضة، الأمر الذي يؤدي إلى مشاكل صحية حقيقية.

-105 -

الفصل الأول

#### C:-----

Experts **recommend** a mixture of activities. These **should** include moderate exercise, such as fast walking, and more <u>strenuous</u> exercise, like running. **They also advise exercise that strengthens the muscles, for example sit-ups.** The more muscle we build, the more calories we burn, and the fitter we become. In addition, exercise is a great way to cope with stress. In a recent study, patients <u>who</u> had been suffering from depression reported a great improvement after increased physical activity.

ويوصي الخبراء بمجموعة (بمزيج) من الأنشطة والتي تتضمن أنشطة معتدلة مثل المشّي السريع والتمارين الأكثر إجهاداً، مثل الجري، كما أنهم ينصحون كذلك بالتمارين التي من شأنها أن تقوي العضلات مثل تمارين المعدة. وكلما زدنا من بنائنا للعضلات كلما حرقنا سعرات حرارية وكلما أصبحنا أكثر لياقة ورشاقة. إضافة إلى ذلك، فإن التمرين طريق عظيم للتعامل مع التوتر، ففي دراسة حديثة فإن المرضى الذين كانوا يعانون من الاكتئاب قد تحسنت أحوالهم بعد النشاط البدني المتزايد.

#### D: -----

Of course this raises a question: how can I manage to fit in all this extra exercise? The best way is to build it into our daily lives so that it becomes a routine.

It doesn't have to take much extra time. You could get off the bus one stop earlier than usual, or stand up when you're on the phone! Most importantly, we should find a sport that we <u>enjoy doing</u>. That way, we will all become <u>fitter, healthier and</u> <u>happier</u>.

وبالطبع، فإن هذا الأمر يثير سؤالاً وهو: كيف بإمكاننا أن ندير الأمر مع كل هذه التمرينات الإضافية؟ الطريقة الفضلى هي جعل الرياضة من ضمن حياتنا اليومية بحيث تصبح روتيناً. كما بإمكاننا النزول من الباص قبل المكان المراد أو الوقوف حال الاتصال هاتفياً. والأمر الأكثر أهمية هو أننا يجب علينا أن نجد رياضة نستمتع بممارستها، وبهذه الطريقة سنصبح أكثر لياقة وصحة وسعادةً.

## **QUESTIONS**

1. Match the paragraphs with the correct headings. One heading is not needed. (WB, p.13)

- 1- Time to listen
- **2- Useful tips**
- 3- Don't leave it too late!
- 4- A growing problem
- 5- It's good for you!

2. According to the article, what are the main reasons for higher rates of obesity?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. What is the minimum amount of exercise recommended for someone in your age group?

4. Do most British people get enough exercise? Which sentence in the article tells you this?

-106 -

\_\_\_\_\_

5. What does the underlined word <u>"strenuous"</u> mean? -----

الفصل الأول

ثائر النمورة

6. The author suggests some ways for including exercise in our normal lives. Give two examples from the article.

7. What do the underlined **pronouns** refer to?

8. Ouote the sentence which indicates the considerable increase in obesity in the world.

\_\_\_\_\_

9. How is the World Wide Web helpful to do shopping nowadays?

10. Do girls often like sports? What are the consequences (bad effects) of this?

11. How long should adults, children and teenagers aim to exercise?

12. Give an example for moderate exercise and another one for more strenuous exercise.

-

13. What is the relationship between body building, calories and fitness?

14. The writer states that exercise is a great way to cope with stress. Explain this statement and, in two sentences, write down your point of view. (CRITICAL THINKING)

-----

15. What were the findings of the recent study regarding depression and exercise?

16. What is the best way for managing to fit in all this extra exercise?

17. What do we call the following forms (**fitter, healthier and happier**) in English?

18. Find a verb in the text that means "to deal successfully with, or handle, a situation".

19. The acronym **PE** stands for ------ .

20. Find an item in the text which means "directing your attention or effort at something specific".

### **MODEL ANSWERS**

A-4 B-1 C-5 D-2
 the growing popularity of fast food; increasing inactivity (preferring to drive rather than walk, and shopping online)
 at least on heavier energies energy deependent.

3. at least an hour's exercise every day

الفصل الاول



-107 -

4. No, they don't: 'However, recent research shows that less than 50% of the British population manages this.'

5. requiring a lot of effort

6. getting off the bus one stop earlier than usual; standing up when you're on the phone

7. - which : fast food / its : modern technology / their: health experts / who: patients

8. In many countries, an increasing number of young people and adults are overweight or even obese.

9. Before the Internet was invented, nobody had dreamt of online shopping, but now we can buy almost anything without leaving the sofa.

10. Girls in particular often dislike PE. This can lead to serious health problems.

11. Adults should aim to exercise for at least two and a half hours every week; for children and teenagers the target should be at least an hour a day.

12. moderate exercise: fast walking / more strenuous exercise: running

13. The more muscle we build, the more calories we burn, and the fitter we become.

14. I think that exercise helps to reduce stress and pressure of life. Many people often join a gym in order to keep healthy physically and psychologically.

15. In a recent study, patients who had been suffering from depression reported a great improvement after increased physical activity.

16. The best way is to build it into our daily lives so that it becomes a routine.

17. comparatives

18. cope with

19. Physical Education

20. focusing on

### **Revision for the vocabulary of unit ONE**

Answer the following questions.

1. Which of these is an **invention** – the TV or **gravity**? Explain your answer.

2. What is the difference between a **smartphone** and an ordinary mobile phone?

3. If you need to make a **calculation**, what do you usually use?

4. Which would you rather have – a **PC**, a **tablet** or a **laptop**? Why?

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Do you usually use a **floppy disk**? If not, what do you use?

#### Answers:

1. the TV; it is a product that is man-made 2. a smartphone has Internet access

3. a calculator 4. I would rather have a laptop because it is the most practical device. **{Open}** 

5. I don't use a floppy disk at all. Instead, I use a USB (Universal Serial Bus). **{Open}** 

الفصل الاول

ثائر النمورة

## **PRONUNCIATION** Using the International Phonetic Alphabet – **IPA** (1)

onsonants			Vowels	
Symbol	Key word		Symbol	Key word
р	pen	short	1	bit
b	back		e	b <b>e</b> d
t	ten		æ	cat
d	day		D	d <b>o</b> g (Br E)
k	key		۸	cut
g	get		υ	put
f	fat		ə	about
v	view		i	happ <b>y</b>
θ	thing		u	actuality
ð	then			
S	soon	long	i:	sh <b>ee</b> p
Z	zero		a	father
ſ	<b>sh</b> ip		51	four
3	pleasure		u:	b <b>oo</b> t
h	hot		3:	bird (Br E)
х	lo <b>ch</b>			
t∫	cheer	diphthongs	eı	make
d3	jump		aı	lie
m	sum		JI	b <b>oy</b>
n	sun		ວບ	note (Br E)
ŋ	su <b>ng</b>		au	n <b>ow</b>
w	wet		IЭ	real
1	let		eə	h <b>air</b> (Br E)
r	red		ບອ	sure (Br E)
j	yet		uə	actual
			iə	peculiar (Br E

#### **Appendix 2: Pronunciation table**

#### **Special signs**

1'1	shows main stress
1.1	shows secondary stress
121	means that there is a brief pause in the word and no sound
	comes out until the next letter is pronounced
(Br E).	British English pronunciation

69

ثائر النمورة

Question Number Seven (SB; p. 17)

الفصل الأول

- 1. / 'æŋgri / a. importance
- 2. / ka:m / b. school
- 3. / sku:l / c. exercise
- 4. / ' eksəsaız / d. angry
- 5. / im'pɔːtəns / e. calm

#### Answers

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

الفصل الأول

ثائر النمورة

-110 -

# **Unit 3: Medical Advances**

Young Emirati inventor is going to travel the world (SB, p.20) مخترع إماراتي صغير السن سيجوب العالم

No.	Words	Meanings (E)	Meanings (A)
1	appendage	a <b>body part</b> , such as an arm or a	a second second
		leg, connected to the main <b>trunk</b>	لاحقة (عضو)
		of the body	
2	artificial	made or produced by human	اصطناعي
		beings rather than occurring	
		naturally	
3	limb	arm or leg of a person	طرف من أطراف جسم
			طرف من أطراف جسم الإنسان
4	prosthetic	an <b>artificial</b> body part	اصطناعي
5	reputation	the <b>common opinion</b> that people	
		have about someone or	سمعة
		something	
6	sponsor	to <b>financially support</b> a person	
	_	or an event	يرعى (ماليا ً)
7	apparatus	the <b>technical equipment</b> or	جهاز
		machinery needed for a particular	
		purpose	

Ten-year-old Adeeb al-Balooshi, from Dubai, **is going to travel** to seven countries on a tour <u>which (1)</u> has been organised and funded by Sheikh Hamdan bin Mohammad, Crown Prince of Dubai.

سيسافر "أديب البلوشي" ـ من دبي والبالغ من العمر عشر سنينـ إلى سبع دول في رحلة تم تنظيمها وتمويلها من قبل سمو الشيخ حمدان بن محمد أمير دبيّ.

The boy caught Sheikh Hamdan's attention with <u>his</u> invention – a **prosthetic limb** for his father. The Sheikh has taken a special interest in the boy, and **hopes** the tour that he is sponsoring for Adeeb **will give** the young inventor more <u>self-confidence</u> and inspire other young Emirati inventors.

-111 -



وقد حظي الطفل باهتمام وانتباه الشيخ حمدان باختراعه لأحد الأطراف الصناعية لوالده، فحظي الطفل باهتمام خاص من الشيخ وتمنى له أن يستفيد من الرحلة التي رعاها وأن تعطي الطفل أديباً مزيداً من الثقة بالنفس له وللمختر عين الإماراتيين الآخرين.

Adeeb got the idea for a special kind of prosthetic leg while he was at the beach with his family. His father, **who** wears an **artificial** leg, could not swim in the sea as he could not risk getting his leg wet. This **inspired** Adeeb to invent a waterproof **prosthetic** leg.

وقد خطرت على بال أديب فكرة النوع الخاص من الأرجل الصناعية عندما كان على الشاطئ مع عائلته، حيث كان أبوه يلبس رجلاً صناعية، ولم يكن يستطيع السباحة في البحر خوفاً من أن تبتلّ رجله، الأمر الذي ألهم أديباً لكي يخترع رجلاً اصطناعية ضد الماء.

Adeeb is going to visit the USA, France, the UK, Ireland, Belgium, Italy and Germany, **<u>where</u>** he **will be staying** with relatives. However, while he is in Germany, Adeeb will not be spending all his time sightseeing. He will be working with a specialist doctor to build the **appendage**. He will also be **attending** a **course** on *prosthetics* and learning about different kinds of *medical* **apparatus**.

سيقوم أديب بزيارة كل من الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية وفرنسا والمملكة المتحدة وإيرلندا وبلجيكا وإيطاليا وألمانيا حيث سيقيم هناك مع أقاربه. و على أية حال، فبينما سيكون أديب في ألمانيا لن يمضي كلّ وقته بمشاهدة الأشياء، بل سيقوم بالعمل مع طبيب مختص لبناء اللاحقة وسيكون ملتحقاً بدورة تتعلق بالأطراف الصناعية وأنواع مختلفة من الأجهزة الطبية.

Adeeb **has invented** several other devices, including a **tiny** cleaning robot and a heart monitor, <u>which (2)</u> is attached to a car seat belt. **In the case of an emergency,** rescue services and the driver's family will be automatically connected with the driver through this special checking **device**.

كما اخترع أديب عدة أجهزة أخرى بما فيها رجل آلي للتنظيف صغير الحجم، وجهاز لمراقبة نبض القلب والذي يتم إرفاقه بحزام الأمان في السيارة، وفي حالة الطوارئ، ستكون فرق الإنقاذ وعائلة السائق متصلة بشكل تلقائي مع السائق خلال جهاز الفحص الخاص.

He has also invented a fireproof **helmet**. This special equipment, <u>which (3)</u> has a built-in camera system, will help rescue workers in emergencies.

كما اخترع خوذة ضد الحريق، حيث تحتوي على نظام كامير ا مدمج يقوم بمساعدة عاملي الإنقاذ في حالات الطوارئ.

It is for these reasons that Adeeb rightly deserves his **reputation** as one of the youngest inventors in the world.

-112 -

ولكل هذه الأسباب استحق أديب هذه السمعة كواحد من أصغر مخترعي العالم.





## QUESTIONS

1. Why was She	ikh Hamdan inte	erested in helpin	g Adeeb? (	SB; p.21)	
2. Why did he o	ffer Adeeb the gi	ift of a world to	ur?		
3. How did Ade	eb get his inspira	tion for a water	proof prost	hetic leg?	
4. Who will Ade	eeb be staying wi	ith in Germany,	And what	will he be doing	there?
5. What does th	ne suffix – proof	'mean (waterp	roof / firep	roof)?	
6. What is the <b>p</b> t the seat <b>belt</b> ?	<b>urpose</b> of the in-	car heart <b>monit</b>	t <b>or</b> ? Why d	o you think that	it is built into
7. Find a word in	n the fifth paragr	aph which give	s the <b>oppos</b>	ite meaning of '	"huge".
8. What do the u	Inderlined prono	uns refer to?			
	ds in the box and e newspaper artic	-	ynonyms. 7	Two words have	e their
apparatus	appendage	artificial	limb	prosthetic	sponsor (v)
	appendage Adeeb come from		limb	prosthetic	sponsor (v)
10. Where does		m?		-	sponsor (v)
10. Where does 11. Who organis	Adeeb come from	m? Adeeb's tour to t		-	sponsor (v)
10. Where does 11. Who organis 12. Mention oth	Adeeb come from sed and funded A er inventions for	m? Adeeb's tour to t Adeeb.		-	sponsor (v)
<ul> <li>10. Where does</li> <li>11. Who organis</li> <li>12. Mention oth</li> <li>13. How does th</li> </ul>	Adeeb come from sed and funded A er inventions for he fireproof helmo-	m? Adeeb's tour to t Adeeb. et work?	he seven co	ountries?	
<ul> <li>10. Where does</li> <li>11. Who organis</li> <li>12. Mention oth</li> <li>13. How does th</li> <li>14. Quote the se on some justific</li> <li>15. Find a word</li> </ul>	Adeeb come from sed and funded A er inventions for he fireproof helmo-	m? Adeeb's tour to t Adeeb. et work? dicates that the y n means <b>"the te</b> e."	he seven co young Arab	ountries? inventor's repu	itation is based
<ul> <li>10. Where does</li> <li>11. Who organis</li> <li>12. Mention oth</li> <li>13. How does th</li> <li>14. Quote the se on some justific</li> <li>15. Find a word needed for a page</li> </ul>	Adeeb come from sed and funded A er inventions for the fireproof helmo- entence which ind ations.	m? Adeeb's tour to t Adeeb. et work? dicates that the y n means <b>"the te</b> e."	he seven co young Arab	ountries? inventor's repu	itation is based

17. Write down the sentence which indicates Adeeb's destination on his tour.

18. Being good to your parents is a real grace. Explain this statement and, in two sentences, write down your point of view. (Critical Thinking)

10 W + 1 = 11.4 + 4.46 Cm = 1.19 Cm + 1.10

19. What do we call the structure "Ten-year-old" in English?

20. Find a hyphenated noun in the text which means 'self-trust'.

.....

## **MODEL ANSWERS**

1. Sheikh Hamdan was interested in Adeeb's invention of a prosthetic limb for his father.

2. He offered Adeeb the world tour to help to give him more self-confidence and to inspire other young inventors from the UAE.

3. He got the inspiration when he was at the beach with his family. His father couldn't swim because he couldn't risk getting his prosthetic leg wet.

4. Adeeb will be staying with relatives in Germany. He will be working with a specialist doctor to build his new invention of the waterproof prosthetic leg, as well as, attending a course to find out more about prosthetics.

#### 5. It means 'to provide protection against'.

6. The in-car heart monitor will be used to keep an eye on those with a heart problem while they are driving or in a car. It is built into the seat belt so that when the driver or passenger wears it, it is near their heart.

7. tiny

8. which (1): a tour / his: The boy / who: Adeeb's father / where: Germany which (2): a heart monitor / which (3): The special equipment " a fireproof helmet ".

9. apparatus - equipment / appendage - limb / artificial - prosthetic / sponsor - fund 10. He comes from Dubai.

11. Sheikh Hamdan bin Mohammad, Crown Prince of Dubai

12. tiny cleaning robot / a heart monitor / a fireproof helmet

13. It has a built-in camera system to help rescue workers in emergencies.

14. It is for these reasons that Adeeb rightly deserves his **reputation** as one of the youngest inventors in the world.

15. apparatus

16. made or produced by human beings rather than occurring naturally

17. Adeeb is going to visit the USA, France, the UK, Ireland, Belgium, Italy and Germany, where he will be staying with relatives.





-114 -

18. I think that our parents should be respected and highly appreciated because they bring us up and help us in all life aspects and stages. In fact, they are a real grace and the way to the paradise.

19. a compound adjective

20. self-confidence

### Vocabulary (WB, p.15)

- 1. Define the following synonyms (words with similar meanings).
  - A- artificial ; prosthetic:------B- apparatus; equipment:------
  - C- fund; sponsor: -----

#### Answer:

- A- describes an object that is manufactured by humans
- B- tools or machines that have a particular purpose
- C- to pay for

#### 2. Choose the correct verb to complete the <u>collocations</u>.

- 1- catch / take someone's attention
- 2- get / catch an idea
- 3- take / get an interest in something / somebody
- 4- spend / do time doing something
- 5- make / attend a course

#### Answer:

1- catch 2- get 3- take 4- spend 5- attend

3. Use the words in the box to complete the sentences. One word is not needed. **QUIZ** 

helmet , inspire , monitor , reputation , risk , seat belt , self-confidence , tiny , waterproof

- 1. You can wear your watch when you go swimming if it's ------.
- 2. It's amazing how huge trees grow from ------ seeds.
- 3. The Olympic Games often ------ young people to take up a sport.
- 4. Please, hurry up. Let's not ----- missing the bus.
- 5. You must always wear a ----- in a car, whether you're the driver or a passenger.
- 6. When my grandfather had a heart attack, the doctors attached a special ------ to his chest.
- 7. It's important to encourage young people and help them develop ------.
- 8. Petra has a ----- as a fascinating place to visit.

الفصل الأول

ثائر النم<u>ورة</u>

# in the future (SB, p.22) في المستقبل

No	WORDS	MEANINGS (E)	MEANINGS (A)
1	cancerous	something that has or can cause cancer, a very serious disease in which cells in the	سرطانی
		body begin to grow abnormally	ر پ 
2	coma	a state of unconsciousness caused by a certain injury and that lasts for an extended period of time	غيبوبة
3	dementia	a mental illness the symptoms of which are problems with memory, personality changes and problems with reasoning	خبل (عته)
4	drug	a medicine or a substance used for making medicines	عقار (دواء)
5	implant	a piece of tissue, prosthetic device, or other object implanted in the body	شيء مزروع بالجسم
6	medical trial	trial to evaluate the effectiveness and safety of medications	محاولة طبية (للتجربة)
7	MRI (Magnetic Resonance Imaging)	a scan that uses strong magnetic fields to make a picture of the inside of someone's body for medical reasons	تصوير بالرنين المغناطيسي
8	pill	a small round piece of medicine to be swallowed whole	حبة دواء
9	radiotherapy	the use of controlled amounts of radiation (a form of energy) to treat disease , especially cancer	العلاج بالأشعة
10	scanner	a medical instrument that uses radiography to produce images of the insides of the human body	ماسح
	الفصل الأول	<u>مورة</u> -116-	ثائر الذ

11	side effect	effects of medicine on your	أثر جانبي
		body in addition to curing pain	
		or illness	
12	stroke	an illness when a blood tube	سكتة دماغية
		in your brain bursts or is	
		blocked, resulting in the brain	
		being unable <b>to</b> function	
		normally	
13	symptom	a physical problem that might	عرض من الأعراض
		indicate a disease	

#### We will be able to have an operation to increase our intelligence.

Scientists <u>have</u> already <u>developed</u> brain implants <u>that</u> improve vision or allow disabled people to use <u>their (1)</u> thoughts in order to control prosthetic limbs like arms, legs or hands, or operate a wheelchair. In 2012 CE, research on monkeys showed that a brain implant improved <u>their (2)</u> decision-making abilities. How will humans benefit from this research? Scientists hope to develop a similar device to help people who have been affected by brain damage, which could be caused by dementia, a stroke or other brain injuries. mee is its index is a stroke or other brain injuries.

لقد قام العلماء بتطوير زراعة للدماغ من شأنها أن تحسّن الرؤية أو تمكن العاجزين من استعمال أفكار هم في سبيل التحكم بالأطراف الصناعية مثل الذراعين والساقين واليدين أو تشغيل كرسي العجلات كذلك. وفي عام 2012 م، أظهر بحث تم إجراؤه على القرود بأن زراعة للدماغ قد حسنت من قدرتهم على اتخاذ القرارات، فكيف يمكن للبشر الاستفادة من هذا البحث؟ يأمل العلماء أن يطوروا جهازاً مشابهاً لمساعدة الناس الذين قد تأثروا وتضرروا بتلف بخلايا الدماغ عن طريق الخلالية

#### Doctors will be able to communicate with people in a coma.

In 2010 CE, neuroscientists **confirmed** that it was possible to communicate with some patients in a coma, by using a special brain scanner called an MRI. <u>They (1)</u> suggested that, in the future, more meaningful dialogue with patients in a coma would be possible. Two years later, it has finally happened. The scanner, used on a man who has been in a coma for more than twelve years, proves that he has a conscious, thinking mind – a fact that had previously been disputed by many. Doctors plan to use similar brain-scanning techniques in the future to find out whether patients are in pain, or what <u>they (2)</u> would like to be done in order to improve their quality of life.

سوف يكون الأطباء قادرين على التواصل مع الناس في الغيبوبة. ففي عام 2010، أكد علماء الأعصاب بأنه بالإمكان التواصل مع بعض المرضى أثناء غيبوبتهم من خلال ماسح ضوئي خاص بالدماغ يدعى (إم آر آي). كما اقترحوا بأنه وفي المستقبل ستكون هناك <u>ثائر النمورة</u> - 117-

حوارات مفيدة بشكل أكبر مع المرضى في غيبوبتهم، وبعد سنتين حصل ذلك أخيراً، حيث أثبت الماسح - والذي تم استخدامه على رجل في غيبوبة دامت أكثر من اثنتي عشرة سنة – على أن الرجل يمتلك عقلاً واعياً ومفكراً، وهي الحقيقة التي كانت من قبل تخالف من قبل العديد من الناس، كما يخطط الأطباء لاستخدام تقنيات مسح دماغي مشابهة في المستقبل لمعرفة فيما إذا كان المرضى يتألمون أو ير غبون بشيء أن يُفعل لتحسين جودة حياتهم.

#### A new drug will help to treat certain types of cancer almost instantly.

A new cancer drug is being trialled in Plymouth, UK, which doctors hope will extend the lives of cancer patients and reduce their symptoms overnight. It is taken as a single pill every morning, and so far patients have shown none of the usual side effects such as the sickness and hair loss that are experienced when undergoing other forms of cancer treatment. The new treatment works by blocking a protein <u>which</u> causes **cancerous** cells to grow. It will improve **patients' life expectancy** and quality of life much more quickly than any other treatment. The patients were interviewed a year after starting the treatment and are fit and well, saying that they are definitely going to continue the trial. They have every reason to **believe** the new drug is going to work. Doctors at Plymouth Hospital hope that it will help patients from all over the world.

عقار جديد سيساعد في علاج أنواع محددة من السرطان بشكل فوري تقريباً. عقار جديد يجري تجريبه في "بليمث" في المملكة المتحدة والذي يأمل الأطباء بأنه سيكون سبباً في إطالة أعمار مرضى السرطان وتقليل أعراضه بين عشية وضحاها. ويتم أخذها كحبة دواء في كل صباح، وحتى الآن لم يظهر على المرضى أيّ من الأعراض الجانبية كالمرض وتساقط الشعر التي يعاني منها الذين يخضعون لطرق أخرى في علاج السرطان. وتعمل من العمر الافتراضي ومن نوعية الحياة وجودتها بشكل أسرع من أنواع العلاج الأخرى، وقد تمت مقابلة المرضى الذين خضعوا للعلاج بعد عام وهم الآن بصحة جيدة حيث أنواع العلاج الأخرى، وقد تمت فريقة يمكون كل الأسباب التي تجعلهم موقنين بأن الدواء (العقار) الجديد سيكون فعّالاً. كما يأمل التجربة في مستشفى "بليمث" بأن الدواء سيساعد المرضى في كل أرجاء العلام.

### QUESTIONS

1. How will we be able to increase our intelligence level in the future?

2. What do the underlined pronouns refer to?

3. What are the benefits of the brain implants?

4. What was the result of the monkeys' study which was conducted in 2012 CE?

الفصل الأول

-118 -

\_\_\_\_\_

ثائر النمورة

5. Mention two causes for brain damage.

6. Find a word in the text which means "a state of unconsciousness caused by a certain injury and that lasts for an extended period of time".

7. Read the words in the box. Which words refer to **illnesses** and other **medical conditions**? Which refer to **medical apparatus or treatment**?

coma , dementia , drug , implant , medical trial , pill , scanner , side effect, stroke, symptom

8. What did neuroscientists confirm in 2010 CE?

-----

9. When could specialists communicate with patients in a coma?

\_\_\_\_\_

10. What was the result of the trial which was done on the man who has been in a coma for more than twelve years?

11. Why do doctors plan to use brain-scanning techniques in the future?

-----

12. What do doctors hope regarding the new cancer drug?

13. Mention two side effects for the usual cancer treatment.

\_\_\_\_\_

14. How does the new cancer drug work?

15. What are the advantages of this treatment?

16. Describe the interviewed patients after starting the treatment.

17. Quote the sentence which indicates that the new cancer drug will spread universally.

18. Science is borderless. Think of this statement and, in two sentences, write down your point of view.





**19. Replace** the words and phrases in bold with words from the box. One word is not needed. (**WB**, p.16) / **QUIZ** 

#### a coma , dementia , medical trials , pills , symptoms

1. Doctors look at the **signs of illness** before they decide how to treat the patient.

2. Before doctors prescribe drugs to patients, scientists perform **special tests** to make sure the drugs are safe.

3. After Ali's accident, he lay in **an unconscious state** for two weeks.

4. My grandfather has to take a lot of medicine – he takes six different **tablets** every day.

#### ANSWERS: -----

### **MODEL ANSWERS**

1. By having an operation

2. that → brain implants / their (1) → disabled people / their (2) → monkeys They (1) → neuroscientists / they (2) → patients / which → a protein
3. improving vision or allowing disabled people to use their thoughts in order to control prosthetic limbs like arms, legs or hands, or operate a wheelchair.

4. It showed that a brain implant improved their decision-making abilities.

5. - dementia - a stroke

6. coma

7. **Illnesses and other medical conditions:** coma, dementia, side effect, stroke, symptom **Medical apparatus or treatment:** drug, implant, medical trial, pill, scanner

8. Neuroscientists confirmed that it was possible to communicate with some patients in a coma, by using a special brain scanner called an MRI.

9. In 2012

10. It proves that the man has a conscious, thinking mind.

11. To find out whether patients are in pain, or what they would like to be done in order to improve their quality of life.

12. They hope that the drug will extend the lives of cancer patients and reduce their symptoms overnight.

13. \* the sickness \* the loss of hair

الفصل الأول

-120 -

ثائر النمورة

14. The new treatment works by blocking a protein which causes cancerous cells to grow. 15. It will improve **patients' life expectancy** and **quality of life** much more quickly than any other treatment.

16. They are fit and well, (saying that they are definitely going to continue the trial).

17. Doctors at Plymouth Hospital hope that it will help patients from all over the world.18. I think that science has no borders these days, so we can find technology everywhere.In fact, knowledge is power and development is needed in all life aspects.

### The King Hussein Cancer Center (SB, p.24)

No.	Words	Meanings (E)	Meanings (A)
1	bionic	describing a limb or body part that is electronically or mechanically powered	ذو أعضاء آلية
2	expansion	the act of making something bigger	توسّع
3	outpatient	someone who goes to a hospital for treatment but does not stay for the night	مريض غير مقيم
4	paediatric	describing the area of medicine that deals with children and their illnesses	متعلق بطب الأطفال
5	ward	a room in a hospital, especially for patients needing similar kinds of care	جناح
6	career	a job undertaken for a significant period of a person's life and with opportunities for progress	وظيفة
7	cross	angry or annoyed	غاضب أو منزعج
8	publicise	to give information about something to the public, so that they know about it	يُعمّم

-121 -

الفصل الأول

### The King Hussein Cancer Center (SB, p.24) مركز الحسين للسرطان

The King Hussein Cancer Center (KHCC) is Jordan's only comprehensive cancer treatment centre. <u>It</u> treats both adult and paediatric patients. As the population of the country increases, more and more families will **rely on** the hospital for cancer treatment. Patients come not only from Jordan but also from other countries in the region, as <u>they</u> are attracted by <u>its</u> excellent reputation, lower costs, and cultural and language similarities.

يعتبر مركز الحسين للسرطان المركز الوحيد الشامل في الأردن الذي يختص بعلاج مرض السرطان، ويعالج كلاً من المرضى البالغين والأطفال. ومع از دياد عدد سكان الأردن فإن كثيراً من العائلات سيعتمدون على هذا المستشفى لعلاج مرض السرطان، كما أن المرضى لا يأتون فقط من الأردن بل من شتى دول المنطقة؛ حيث يجذبهم سمعة المركز الطيبة والتكاليف الزهيدة، والتشابه الثقافي واللغويّ.

In order to **cope with** the increase in demand for treatment, the KHCC has begun an expansion **programme**. Building started in 2011 CE. **The hospital will have more than doubled its capacity by 2016 CE**, increasing space for new cancer cases from 3,500 per year to 9,000.

ومن أجل التعامل مع الطلب المتزايد على العلاج فإن مركز الحسين للسرطان قد بدأ ببرنامج توسعة، حيث بدأ البناء في عام 2011 م، وسيتضاعف حجم المستشفى أكثر من الضعف بحلول عام 2016 م، وذلك لتأمين مكان لحالات جديدة من 3500 كل عام إلى 9000.

**By then,** they **will have added** 182 extra beds, along with bigger units for different departments, including radiotherapy. New adult and paediatric wards will have opened. Additionally, they will have built a special ten-floor outpatients' building, with an education centre **which** will include teaching rooms and a library.

وبعد ذلك، سيكونون قادرين على إضافة 182 سريراً إضافياً، إلى جانب وحدات أكبر لمختلف الأقسام بما فيها العلاج بالأشعة، وسيتم افتتاح أجنحة خاصة بالأطفال، بالإضافة إلى بناء بناية للمرضى غير المقيمين مكونة من عشرة طوابق مع مركز تعليمي يحوي غرفاً للتعليم ومكتبة.

Many cancer patients live far away from Amman, **where** the KHCC is located, and the journey to and from the hospital is often difficult. For this reason, there are plans to extend cancer care facilities to other parts of Jordan. In the near future, King Abdullah University Hospital in Irbid hopes to set up radiotherapy machines, so that cancer patients from northern Jordan will not have to go to Amman for radiotherapy treatment.

العديد من مرضى السرطان يعيشون بعيداً عن عمان، حيث يقع المركز، حيث أن الرحلة من وإلى المستشفى غالباً ما تكون صعبة، ولهذا السبب، فإن هناك خططاً لتمديد خدمات ومرافق علاج السرطان لمناطق أخرى من الأردن. وفي المستقبل القريب، فإن مستشفى الملك المؤسس عبد الله الجامعي في إربد يأمل بتوفير أجهزة العلاج بالأشعة، وبالتالي لن يضطر مرضى السرطان في المناطق الشمالية لرحلة العلاج إلى عمان.

-122 -



## Questions

1. There is another comprehensive cancer treatment centre in Jordan in addition to the King         Hussein Cancer Center.         TRUE       FALSE
<ul><li>2. What do the underlined pronouns refer to?</li><li>3. The KHCC treats two groups of patients (in terms of their age). What are they?</li></ul>
4. Quote the sentence which indicates the reason behind the overdependence on the hospital for cancer treatment in the future.
<ul> <li>5. Find a word in the text which means "a room in a hospital especially for patients needing similar kinds of care".</li> <li>6. Why does the hospital need to expand? (SB, p.25)</li> </ul>
7. Give three reasons why patients from other countries visit the centre.
8. What is one of the disadvantages of the KHCC for patients who live far from Amman?
9. What plans are there for increasing cancer care facilities in other parts of Jordan?
<ul> <li>10. Read the following information and discuss the questions. (SB; p.24)</li> <li>The population of Jordan increased from approximately 2.3 million in 1980 CE to about 6.5 million in 2010 CE. It is expected that the population will keep on increasing, and by 2050 CE it will be about 11.5 million.</li> </ul>
A. How do you think this increase in population will affect Jordan's housing, education, and health facilities?
B. What can be done to help Jordan cope with this increase in population?
11. What are the measures and procedures which have been taken by the KHCC to deal with the increase in demand for treatment?
12. By 2016 CE, there will have been some considerable changes concerning the hospital. Elaborate.
13. By then, they will have added 181 extra beds.TrueFalse
<u>ثائر النمورة</u> - 123- <u>الفصل الأول</u>

14. What will the education centre include?

15. Write down the sentence which indicates that many cancer patients live outside Amman and they have difficulties in their journey for treatment.

16. Read the quotation. Do you agree with it? Why / Why not? "Wherever the art of Medicine is loved, there is also a love of Humanity." Hippocrates (460 BCE – 370 BCE) حين يُعشق الطب تعشق الإنسانية

## **MODEL ANSWERS**

- 1. False
- 2. It : The King Hussein Cancer Centre / They: patients / its: the hospital which: education centre / where: Amman
- 3. adult and paediatric patients
- 4. As the population of the country increases, more and more families will rely on the hospital for cancer treatment.
- 5. ward
- 6. The hospital needs to expand because there is more demand for treatment.
- 7. It has an excellent reputation, the costs are lower and there are cultural and language similarities.
- 8. The journey to and from the hospital is often difficult.
- 9. There are plans to set up radiotherapy machines in Irbid.
- 10.
- A. It might get more difficult for the government to help people, and taxes might increase.
- B. The government should spend more money making sure there are enough facilities for everyone.
- 11. In order to cope with the increase in demand for treatment, the KHCC has begun an expansion programme. Building started in 2011 CE.
- 12. The hospital will have more than doubled its capacity by 2016 CE, increasing space for new cancer cases from 3,500 per year to 9,000.

13. False

- 14. teaching rooms / a library
- 15. Many cancer patients live far away from Amman, where the KHCC is located, and the journey to and from the hospital is often difficult.

16. I agree with the quotation because the message of medicine is to help humans and keep their souls.

-124 -





### **EDITING**

Edit the following text. There are <u>two grammar mistakes and three spelling mistakes</u>. Find and correct them. (SB; p. 25)

In the near future, a new 'bionic eye' **will have helped** people with failing **eyesite** to see again. A **devise** inside the eye picks up an image from a small camera attached to a pair of sunglasses and **send** it to the **brian**, which interprets it as vision.

Answer: -----

### The verbs : hope, plan, and intend

#### Q1 Make correct sentences about the future. (SB; p.23)

- 1. He / hope / become a teacher one day.
- 2. I / intend / apply for a job when I finish university.
- 3. Many hospitals / plan / use robots to help nurses in the future.
- 4. How / you / intend / solve the problem?
- 5. Our school / hope / raise enough money to build a new library.
- 6. you / intend / buy tickets for the play?

#### **Answers:**

- 1. He hopes to become a teacher one day.
- 2. I intend to apply for a job when I finish university.
- 3. Many hospitals plan to use robots to help nurses in the future.
- 4. How do you intend to solve the problem?
- 5. Our school hopes to raise enough money to build a new library.
- 6. Do you intend to buy tickets for the play?

#### Q2 Use either (in) or (at) for the following.

1.----- home, 2.----- a hospital, 3.----- school, 4.----- work, 5.---- the workplace

-125 -

**Answers**: 1.at 2. in 3. at 4.at 5.in

الفصل الأول

ثائر النمورة

#### Accident victim tests first artificial limb (WB; p.17) ضحية حادث يختبر أول طرف اصطناعي

Scientists have **successfully** invented a prosthetic hand **with a sense of touch**. It is an exciting new invention, <u>which (1)</u> <u>they</u> plan to develop. It is possible that, in the not-too-distant future, similar artificial <u>arms and legs</u> will have taken the place of today's <u>prosthetic</u> limbs. List is possible that, in the not-too-distant future, similar artificial <u>arms and legs</u> will have taken the place of today's <u>prosthetic</u> limbs. List is possible that, in the not-too-distant future, be and the place of today's <u>prosthetic</u> limbs.

لقد قام العلماء باحتراع يد اصطناعيه -بسكل ناجح- تمثار بوجود حاسة اللمس، وهي احتراع منير جدا، حيث يهدفون إلى تطويره، ومن الممكن - في المستقبل غير البعيد جدا- ، أن تحلّ سواعد وأرجل مشابهة محل الأطراف الاصطناعية المعروفة اليوم.

Dennis Sorensen, a 39-year-old from Denmark, was the first person to try out the new invention. After losing his left hand in an accident, he **had been using** a standard prosthetic hand for nine years. The new hand, <u>which</u> (2) was developed by Swiss and Italian scientists, was a huge improvement.

دينيس سورينسين، البالغ من العمر 39 عاماً، دنماركي الأصل، كان أول شخص يجرّب الاختراع الجديد، فبعد أن فقد يده اليسرى في حادث، استخدم اليد الاصطناعية المعروفة لمدة تسعة أعوام، أما اليد الجديدة- والتي تم تطوير ها من قبل علماء سويسريين وإيطاليين – فقد كانت تحسيناً كبيراً.

With <u>it</u>, Sorensen could not only pick up and manipulate objects, but <u>he</u> could also feel <u>them</u>. 'When <u>I</u> held an object, I could feel if it was soft or hard, round or square,' he explained. He said that the sensations were almost the same as the <u>ones</u> he felt with his other hand. وباستخدام هذه اليد، لم يعد بوسع سورينسين التقاط الأشياء واللعب بها فحسب بل وأصبح باستطاعته الإحساس بها أيضاً ، وأردف قائلاً: عندما أمسكت بشيء، استطعت الإحساس بكونه ناعماً أو صلباً، دائرياً أو مربعاً، وأضاف إن الإحساس كان

Unfortunately, Sorensen was only taking part in trials, and the equipment is not ready for general use yet. He was only allowed to wear it for a month, for safety reasons. So now he has his old artificial hand back. However, he hopes that soon he will be wearing the new type of hand again. He is looking forward to the time when similar artificial limbs are available for the thousands of people **who** need them. He **will have helped** to transform their lives. ولسوء الحظ، فقد كان سورينسين يشارك في تجارب فحسب، والطرف الذكي لم يكن جاهزاً للاستعمال العامّ بعد، وقد كان مسموحاً له أن يرتديه لشهر واحد فقط، وذلك لأسباب تتعلق بالسلامة، ولذا فقد عاد لاستخدام يده الاصطناعية التقليدية

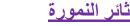
القديمة، و على أية حال، فإنه يأمل أن يستخدم النوع الجديد من الأيادي الصناعية قريباً للمرة الثانية، كما يتطلع بشوق لذلك الوقت الذي ينعم فيه آلاف الناس باستخدام هذه الأطراف الذكية، الأمر الذي سيحوّل حياتهم للأفضل.

### QUESTIONS

-126 -

1. Quote the sentence which indicates that Sorensen hopes that the new invention will widely spread in the world.





2. What do the underlined words refer to?

3. Who invented the new prosthetic hand? What is special about it? (WB, p.17)

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Why does Sorensen need a prosthetic hand?

5. Which hand is he wearing now? Why?

6. Find a word that is the **opposite** of 'natural' in the first and third paragraphs.

\_\_\_\_\_

7. Find a word which means "describing an artificial body part".

8. Write down the sentence which indicates that Dennis was the first one who tried out the new invention.

-----

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

9. Quote the sentence which indicates that the new invention has not been released yet publicly and officially.

10. Write the following statement in the reported speech "Scientists have successfully invented a prosthetic hand with a sense of touch."

11. Find two nationalities in the text.

12. How long was Sorensen allowed to try out the smart hand?

\_\_\_\_\_

13. Find two synonyms in the text.

14. **Replace** the underlined phrase "<u>**arms and legs**</u>" with a single word which has a similar meaning to it.

15. Find two adjectives which are related to the shape of objects.

-----

16. What is the underlined tense <u>"will have helped"</u>?



ثائر النمورة

### **MODEL ANSWERS**

1. "He is looking forward to the time when similar artificial limbs are available for the thousands of people who need them."

2. which (1)→ a prosthetic hand with a sense of touch / they → Scientists which (2) / it → The new hand / he → Sorensen / them → objects I → Dennis Sorensen / ones → sensations / who → the thousands of people

3. Swiss and Italian scientists; it allows the wearer to feel objects.

- 4. because he lost his left hand in an accident
- 5. his old artificial hand, because the new hand is not yet ready for general use
- 6. artificial

#### 7. prosthetic

8. Dennis Sorensen, a 39-year-old from Denmark, was the first person to try out the new invention.

9. Unfortunately, Sorensen was only taking part in trials, and the equipment is not ready for general use yet.

10. The writer said that the scientists had successfully invented a prosthetic hand with a sense of touch.

- 11. Swiss and Italian
- 12. for a month
- 13. prosthetic / artificial
- 14. limbs
- 15. round / square
- 16. Future Perfect

### **PRONUNCIATION: Using the International Phonetic Alphabet – IPA (2)**

Write the following words using the IPA (SB; p.23)

- 1. technology : -----
- 2. audience: -----
- 3. healthy: -----
- 4. carrying: -----



ثائر النمورة

**Unit 4: The importance of Islamic achievements in history** (SB; p.28) أهمية الإنجازات الإسلامية في التاريخ

No.	Words	Meanings (E)	Meanings (A)
1	arithmetic	the branch of mathematics concerned with numerical calculations such as addition, subtraction, multiplication and division	الحساب
2	composition	a piece of music that someone has written	قطعة موسيقية
3	geometry	the branch of mathematics concerned with the properties, relationships and measurement of points, lines, curves and surfaces	علم الهندسة
4	ground-breaking	new, innovative	جديد ، إبداعي
5	inheritance	money or things that you get from someone after they die	جديد ، إبداعي إرث / ميراث
6	mathematician	a person who studies Mathematics to a very complex level	رياضي (من الرياضيات)
7	musical harmony	a pleasant sound in music, made by playing or singing a group of different notes together.	تناغم موسيقي
8	philosopher	someone who studies and writes philosophy professionally, or an undergraduate student of Philosophy	فينسوف
9	physician	someone qualified to practice medicine, especially one who specialises in diagnosis and treatment	طبيب
10	polymath	someone who has a lot of knowledge about many different subjects	متعدد الفنون
11	revolutionise	to completely change the way people do something or think about something	يحدث ثورة
12	camera obscura	Latin for 'dark room'; an optical device that led to photography and the invention of the camera	الكاميرا المظلمة
	الفصل الأول	ثائر النمورة - 129-	

The importance of Islamic achievements in history (SB; p.28) أهمية الإنجازات الإسلامية في التاريخ قطعة استماع

#### Jabir ibn Hayyan جابر بن حيان (born 722 CE, died 815 CE)

The Arab world has many famous chemists in its history, but the person who (1) is known as the founder of chemistry is probably Jabir ibn Hayyan. He is most well known for the beginning of the production of sulphuric acid. He also built a set of scales which changed the way in which chemists weighed items in a laboratory: his scales could weigh items over 6,000 times smaller than a kilogram.

إن العالم العربي زاخر بالكيميائيين المشهورين في التاريخ، ولكن الشخص الذي يُعرف بمؤسس علم الكيمياء قد يكون "جابر بن حيان" ، و هو معروف كثيراً بالبدء بإنتاج حمض (الكبريتيك)، حيث وضع مجموعة من المقاييس والمكاييل والتي قد غيرت من طريقة وزن الأشياء في المختبر، وموازينه استطاعت أن توزن وتكيل أشياء أصغر من الكبلو غر ام ب 6000 مر ة.

## Ali ibn Nafi' (Ziryab) - (زرياب) على بن نافع (زرياب)

#### (born 789 CE, died 857 CE)

Ali ibn Nafi' is also known as 'Zeryab' (or 'Blackbird', because of his beautiful voice). He was a gifted pupil of a famous musician from Baghdad, and it was his talent for music that led him to Cordoba in the **ninth century** CE. He was the guest of the Umayyad ruler *there*. He is the person who established the first music school in the world in Cordoba, Al-Andalus, teaching musical harmony and composition. He revolutionised musical theory, and is also the person who introduced the oud to Europe.

يعرف على بن نافع بزرياب ( أو الطّبر الأسود، وذلك لجمال صوته)، وقد كان طالباً موهوباً لموسيقار مشهور من بغداد، والذّي قاده إلى قرطبة هو موهبته ومحبته للموسيقي، وقد كان ذلك في القرن التاسع الميلادي، وقد كان ضيف الأمير الأموي هناك، كما ويعتبر أول من أسس مدرسة للموسيقي في العالم في قرطبة (الأندلس) لتعليم التناغم والتأليف الموسيقي، وقد أثار نظرية الموسيقي، وهو من قدّم العود للعالم.

#### فاطمة الفهرى Fatima al-Fihri

#### (born early 9<sup>th</sup> century, died 880 CE)

Fatima al-Fihri was the daughter of a wealthy businessman. She used her father's inheritance to build a learning centre in Fez, Morocco. This learning centre became Morocco's top university, and it is where many students from all over the world come to study. Moreover, it was Fatima's sister, Mariam, who (2) supervised the building of the Andalus Mosque, which was not far from the learning centre.

فاطمة الفهري ابنة لرجل أعمال ثري، حيث استعملت مير اثها من أبيها لبناء مركز تعليمي في " فاس" بالمغرب، وقد أصبح هذا المركز الجامعة الأولى على مستوى المغرب، حيث يأتي العديد من الطلبة من شتى انحاء العالم ليدرسوا فيها، علاوة على ذلك، فقد كانت أخت فاطمة وتدعى "مريم" هي مُن أشرف على بناء مسجد الأندلس والذي لا يبعد كثيراً عن مركز فاطمة التعليمي.

-130 -

الفصل الأول

#### Al-Kindi (born around 801 CE, died 873 CE) الكندي

Al-Kindi was a physician, philosopher, mathematician, chemist, musician and astronomer – a true **polymath**. He made ground-breaking **discoveries** in many of these fields, but it is probably his work in arithmetic and geometry that has made him most famous.

وقد كان الكندي طبيباً وفيلسوفاً ورياضياً، وكيميائياً، وموسيقاراً، وفلكياً – متعدد الفنون، وقد اكتشف اكتشافات جديدة وإبداعية في العديد من الحقول العلمية، ولربما عمله في علم الحساب والهندسة هو ما جعله مشهوراً.

### **QUESTIONS**

1. What is Jabir ibn Hayyan marked by? (If compared with other chemists)
2. What do the underlined pronouns refer to?
3. Find a word in the text that means <b>"someone who has a lot of knowledge about many different subjects".</b>
4. What is Jabir ibn Hayyan most famous for?
5. What does the underlined word <b>"ground-breaking"</b> mean?
6. What were Jabir's scales marked by?
7. Ali ibn Nafi' is also known as 'ziryab' (or 'Blackbird'). Why?
8. What led Ziryab to Cordoba in the ninth century?
9. What was the musical instrument introduced by Ziryab to the world?
10. What was the purpose of establishing the first music school in the world in Cordoba?
11. What did Fatima al-Fihri use her father's inheritance for?
12. What did Fatima's sister supervise?
13. Quote the sentence which indicates that Al-Kindi was specialised in many fields.
14. What does the prefix (poly) mean in the word "polymath"?
<u>ثائر النمورة</u> - 131- <u>الفصل الأول</u>

15. What really made Al-Kindi's good reputation and fame?

16. Read the words in the box. GROUP them in two categories.(subjects ; people specialised in certain fields of study)

arithmetic , geometry , mathematician , philosopher , physician , polymath

17. Which Arab optical scientist invented the camera obscura? (Research Box, SB, p.28)

18. Do you think that it was easier or more difficult in those days to reach such high

levels of achievement in comparison with the present day? Give a reason for your opinion. (SB, p. 29)

## **MODEL ANSWERS**

- 1. He is probably known as the founder of chemistry.
- 2. its ↔ The Arab world / who (1) ↔ the person / which ↔ a set of scales / who (2) ↔ Mariam
- 3. polymath
- 4. the beginning of the production of sulphuric acid
- 5. new, innovative
- 6. His scales could weigh items over 6,000 times smaller than a kilogram.
- 7. Because of his beautiful voice
- 8. His talent for music
- 9. the oud
- 10. teaching musical harmony and composition
- 11. to build a learning centre in FEZ, Morocco.
- 12. She supervised the building of the Andalus Mosque.
- 13. Al-Kindi was a physician, philosopher, mathematician, chemist, musician and
- astronomer a true polymath.
- 14. many, multi-.
- 15. It is probably his work in arithmetic and geometry that has made him most famous.
- 16. subjects: arithmetic , geometry

#### - people specialised in certain fields of study:

mathematician, philosopher, physician,

polymath

17. Ibn al-Haitham invented it. A camera obscura (which means 'dark room' in Latin) is an optical device that projects an image of its surroundings onto a screen. Its invention led to the invention of the camera.

-132 -

الفصل الأ<u>ول</u>



18. I think that it was more difficult for people in the past to reach such high levels of achievement in comparison with the present day: there was much less access to information in the past, so people like Al-Kindi had to be truly revolutionary and creative in their thinking in order to succeed.

### VOCABULARY (WB; p.20)

1. Complete the sentences with the words in the box. One word is not needed.

philosopher, arithmetic, polymath, chemist, geometry, physician, mathematician

1. My father teaches Maths. He's a ..... 2. You must not take in medicine without consulting a ..... 3. We learn about shapes, lines and angles when we study ...... 4. Mr Shahin is a true ..... working in all kinds of creative and scientific fields. 5. Ramzi is very good with numbers and calculations. He always scores high in ..... 6. A ..... is someone who thinks and writes about the meaning of life. **Answers:** 2. Match the words with the correct **definitions**. One definition is extra. 4. polymath 5. arithmetic 6. laboratory 1. talent 2. founder **3.** scales a. an expert in many subjects : -----b. a room for scientific experiments -----c. the person who starts something new, such as an organisation or a city -----d. an instrument to measure weight -----e. an engineer f. the study of numbers -----g. special ability -----Answers: 1. g 2. c 3. d 4. a 5. f 6. b التمورة الفصل الاول -133 -

### Masdar City – a positive step? مدينة مصدر – خطوة إيجابية ؟

No.	Words	Meanings (E)	Meanings (A)
1	artificially-created	not real or not made of natural things but made to be like something that is real or natural	مصنوع
2	carbon-neutral	not affecting the total amount of carbon dioxide in Earth's atmosphere	حيادي الكربون
3	criticise	to judge (something) with disapproval; to evaluate or analyse (something)	ينتقد
4	desalination	the process of removing salt from sea water so that it can be used	تحلية المياه
5	grid	a system of wires through which electricity is connected to different power stations across a region	شبكة
6	megaproject	a very large, expensive ambitious business project	مشروع عملاق
7	outweigh	to be more important than something else	يكون الأهم
8	pedestrian	someone who is walking, especially along a street or another place that is used by cars	الماشي (مفرد المشاة)
9	sustainability	the state of being able to continue forever, or for a very long time; for example, the sustainability of the environment involves emitting less pollution and using less water	الاستدامة
10	zero-waste	producing no waste, or having parts that can be reused	خالي من المخلفات
<u>ثائر النمورة</u> - 134- <u>الفصل الأول</u>			

Masdar City – a positive step? مدينة مصدر – خطوة ايحابية ؟

**Megaprojects** are extremely large investment projects, <u>which (1)</u> are designed to encourage economic growth and bring new benefits to cities. Although megaprojects vary in terms of **size and cost**, they are all, by definition, expensive, public projects that attract a high level of interest and media coverage. Projects range from motorways, airports, stations, tunnels, bridges, etc. to entire city complexes.

المشاريع العملاقة هي مشاريع استثمارية ضخمة مصممة لتشجيع النمو الاقتصادي وجلب المنافع الجديدة للمدن، وعلى الرغم من أن المشاريع العملاقة الضخمة تتفاوت في حجمها وتكلفتها إلا أنها مشاريع مكلفة وعامة تحظى باهتمام خاص وتغطية إعلامية ، كما أن المشاريع تشمل الطرق السريعة والمطارات والمحطات (المواقف) والأنفاق والجسور... إلخ، كما وتشمل مجمّعات المدينة.

The concept of a megaproject is always based on the benefits <u>it</u> brings to a community. However, many megaprojects have been criticised because of their negative effects on a community or the environment. This essay will look at these issues with regard to Masdar City, a megaproject in Abu Dhabi.

ويقوم مفهوم المشروع العملاق دائماً على المنافع التي يجلبها للمجتمع، وعلى أية حال ، فإنّ العديد منّ المشاريع العملاقة تم انتقادها لأثار ها السلبية على المجتمع او البيئة، وستتناول المقالة الحديث عن هذه القضايا بالنظر إلى مدينة مصدر - المشروع العملاق في أبو ظبي.

Masdar City, which began its development in 2006 CE, will be the world's first carbonneutral, zero-waste artificially-created city. Covering an area of six square kilometres, when it is completed in 2025 CE, **it is expected** to house more than 40,000 residents, 50,000 commuters, and 1,500 businesses involved in mainly environmentally-friendly products.

وستكون مدينة مصدر والتي قد بدأ تطوير ها في عام 2006 م أول مدينة اصطناعية في العالم حيادية الكربون وخالية من المخلفات، وبمساحتها البالغة ستة كيلومترات مربعة وفي تمامها عام 2025 م فإنه من المتوقع أن تحتضن أكثر من 40000 ساكن مقيم و 50000 مسافر للعمل و 1500 من الأعمال التي تعد منتجاتها صديقة للبيئة.

The city will run entirely on **renewable energy sources**. It is built on an advanced energy grid <u>which (2)</u> monitors exactly how much electricity is being used by every outlet in the complex.

وستقوم المدينة - بشكل كامل – على مصادر الطاقة المتجددة، وهي مبنية على شبكة متقدمة من الطاقة والتي تراقب كمية الكهرباء المستهلكة من قبل كل منفذ للتيار الكهربائي في المجمّع.

Furthermore, in order to reduce its carbon footprint, Masdar City will be a car-free zone, designed to be pedestrian and cycle-friendly. Electric, driverless cars will **operate** as

-135 -

<u>ثائر النمورة</u>

public transport vehicles, and the city will be connected to other locations by a network of roads and railways.

و علاوة على ذلك، وفي سبيل تقليل أثر الكربون فإن مدينة مصدر ستكون منطقة خالية من السيار ات ومصممة للمشاة وللدر اجات صديقة البيئة. كما وأن هناك سيار ات كهر بائية وبلا سائق ستعمل كمر كبات للنقل العالم، وسيتم ربط المدينة بالمواقع الأخرى عن طريق الطرق والسكك الحديدية.

Energy will be provided by <u>solar power and wind farms</u>, and there are also plans to build the world's largest hydrogen plant. A **desalination** plant will be used to provide the city's water, with 80% of water used being recycled. Biological waste will be used as an energy source too, and industrial waste will be recycled.

وسيتم التزويد بالطاقة من قبل الطاقة الشمسية ومزارع الرياح، كما أن هناك خططاً لبناء أكبر مزرعة هيدروجين في العالم، وستقوم محطة تحلية المياه بتزويد المدينة بالماء و 80% من الماء يعاد تدويره، كما وسيتم استخدام المخلفات الحيوية كمصدر للطاقة أيضاً، ناهيك عن أن المخلفات الصناعية سوف يتم تدوير ها كذلك.

The current residents of Masdar City are all students at the Masdar Institute of Science and Technology, a university <u>whose</u> students are fully committed to finding solutions to the world's energy problems.

أما سكان مدينة مصدر الحاليين فجميعهم طلاب جامعة مصدر للعلوم والتكنولوجيا، وهي جامعة أخذ طلابها على عاتقهم إيجاد حلول لمشاكل الطاقة في العالم.

While the project has the support of many global, environmental and conservation organisations, there is some criticism of it. It is felt that, instead of building an **artificial** sustainable city, **sustainability** should be made a **priority** of existing cities.

وبينما حظي المشروع بدعم وتأييد العديد من المؤسسات العالمية والبيئية إلا أن هناك بعض الانتقادات وهي أنه وبدل بناء مدينة صناعية مستدامة ، الأصل جعل الاستدامة أولوية للمدن الموجودة.

In **conclusion**, the benefits of Masdar City for the community and the environment greatly outweigh any disadvantages. If the aims of the developers are realised, Masdar City will be a blueprint for future urban planning that will inspire similar megaprojects in other countries.

وختاماً ، فإن فوائد مدينة مصدر للمجتمع والبيئة تفوق أية سلبيات، وإذا ما تم تحقيق أهداف المطورين فإن مدينة مصدر ستكون أساساً للتخطيط الحضري في المستقبل والذي سيكون مصدر إلهام لمشاريع عملاقة مشابهة في دول أخرى.

### QUESTIONS

-136 -

1. Find a word in the text that means "to be more important than something else".

2. What do the underlined pronouns refer to?

الفصل الأول



## تم التحميل من موقع الأوائل التعليمي www.awa2el.net 3. What examples of megaprojects are provided in the essay? (SB; p.33) 4. What are the advantages of the creation of Masdar City? What are the disadvantages? 5. Do you think that Masdar City is a beneficial project or not? Give your reasons. \_\_\_\_\_ 6. What are the purposes of designing megaprojects? 7. Megaprojects vary in terms of two points. Write down these two points. 8. Do you think that a similar project to Masdar City would be successful in Jordan? What advantages and disadvantages can you think of? (SB; p. 33) - Speaking exercise ----9. What do megaprojects have in common? 10. Where is Masdar City located? 11. Ouote the sentence which indicates the area of Masdar City and what it houses. 12. What does the advanced energy grid do? 13. Why will Masdar City be a car-free zone? \_\_\_\_\_ 14. What will be used in Masdar City for public transport? 15. How will Masdar City be connected to other locations? 16. Replace the following phrase solar power and wind farms with another one from the fourth paragraph? 17. How will Masdar City deal with sea water, biological waste and industrial waste? 18. Who are the present residents of Masdar City? What is their role in the community? 19. Write down the sentence which indicates that the advantages of Masdar City are more important than its disadvantages. 20. What will happen if the goals of Masdar City are achieved? الفصل الأول ثائر النمورة -137 -

## **MODEL ANSWERS**

- 1. outweigh
- 2. which (1): megaprojects / it: a megaproject /

which (2): an advanced energy grid / whose: a university

3. Examples of projects include motorways, airports, stations, tunnels, bridges and entire city complexes.

4. The advantages include the fact that it will be the world's first carbon-neutral, zerowaste city. It will also be a car-free zone, although there will be excellent public transport. The disadvantage is that existing cities are nowhere near as environmentally clean, and many people think the money should have been spent on cleaning up existing places and making them more sustainable.

5. Yes, I think it is beneficial because it depends on recyclling and renewable resources. Also, it preserves our environment and keeps it clean.

6. to encourage economic growth and bring new benefits to cities

7. size / cost

8. I think that a megaproject like Masdar City would be very successful in Jordan: it would encourage investment in the country and benefit the population by providing an environmentally-friendly space for people to live in. However, we would have to be careful not to overshadow the natural beauty of our country with too much building: we would have to find the project balance between modernity and future.

9. They expensive, public projects that attract a high level of interest and media coverage. 10. in Abu Dhabi

- 11. Covering an area of six square kilometres, when it is completed in 2025 CE, it is expected to house more than 40,000 residents, 50,000 commuters, and 1,500 businesses involved in mainly environmentally-friendly products.
- 12. It monitors exactly how much electricity is being used by every outlet in the complex.
- 13. to reduce the carbon footprint

14. electric, driverless cars

15. by a network of roads and railways

16. renewable energy sources

17. A desalination plant will be used to provide the city's water, with 80% of water used being recycled. Biological waste will be used as an energy source too, and industrial waste will be recycled.

18. Students at the Masdar Institute of Science and Technology. Their role is to find solutions to the world's problems.

19. In conclusion, the benefits of Masdar City for the community and the environment greatly outweigh any disadvantages.

20. City will be a blueprint for future urban planning that will inspire similar megaprojects in other countries.

-138 -

الفصل الأول



### Vocabulary (SB; p.33)

Q1: Look at the nouns in the box. Which adjectives **collocate** with them? Write them next to the adjectives.

growth , effect , transport , footprint , waste , planning

#### 3. biological 4. carbon 5. negative 6. economic 1. urban 2. public

**Answers:** 

1. urban planning 2. public transport 3. biological waste 4. carbon footprint 5. negative effect 6. economic growth

#### **Q2:** Complete the sentences with the correct collocations from the previous exercise.

1. When people talk about -----, they can mean either an improvement in the average standard of living, or an increase in the value of a **country's products**.

2. Pollution has some serious ----- on the environment, such as the death of wildlife and plant life.

3. We can all work hard to reduce our ----- by living a more environmentallyfriendly lifestyle.

4. If we take ----- more often, there will be fewer cars on the roads, which will result in cleaner air in our cities.

5. Hospitals need to dispose of a lot of -----, and it should be carefully managed because it can be dangerous.

6. The need for more effective ------ is evident when we consider modern day problems like traffic.

-139 -

#### **Answers:**

- 1. economic growth 2. negative effects 3. carbon footprint 4. public transport
  - 5. biological waste 6. urban planning



التمورة

### A founding father of farming (WB; p. 22) الأب المؤسس للزراعة

Ibn Bassal was a writer, a scientist and an engineer who lived in Al-Andalus in the **eleventh** century CE. He worked in the court of Al-Ma'mun, **who** was the king of Toledo. His great passions were *botany*, **which** is the study of plants, and agriculture. Although he was a great scholar, he was also a practical man and all of his writing came from his own 'hands-on' experience of working the land.

كان ابن بصال كاتباً، وعالماً، ومهندساً عاش في الأندلس في القرن الحادي عشر الميلادي، وقد عمل في **بلاط** المأمون، والذي كان ملك (توليدو) وكان شغوفاً بعلم النبات - و هو علم دراسة النبات- والزراعة، وعلى الرغم من أنه كان عالماً فقد كان رجلاً عملياً وجميع ما كتب كان نابعاً من خبرته العملية بعمله بالأرض.

One of the many things which Ibn Bassal achieved was A book of Agriculture. The book consisted of sixteen chapters which explain how best to grow trees, fruit and vegetables, as well as herbs and sweet-smelling flowers; perhaps the most famous chapter of all was the one that described how to treat different types of soil. Ibn Bassal also worked out how to irrigate the land by **finding underground water and digging wells**. He designed water pumps and irrigation systems. All of these things were passed on through his writing. *e*[1] *e* 

The influence of Ibn Bassal's book was **enormous**. As farmers down the generations followed his instructions and advice, the land became wonderfully **fertile** and **produced** more than enough food for the fast-growing population. The irrigation systems that he and his followers put in place are still in evidence in Spain. Although his name is not widely known, Ibn Bassal's legacy to the world has been great.

إنّ تأثير كتاب ابن بصال كان ضخماً، ولأن المزارعين اتبعوا تعليماته ونصائحه فإن الأرض أصبحت أكثر خصوبة، وأنتجت غذاء أكثر من اللازم للسكان المتزايد عددهم بسرعة، ولا تزال أنظمة الريّ دليلاً شاهداً في اسبانيا، وعلى الرغم من أن اسمه غير معروف بشكل واسع إلا أن ميراثه للعالم كان عظيماً. # ثائر النمورة

-140 -



## QUESTIONS

1. Where did Ibn Bassal live and when?
2. What do the underlined words <b>refer</b> to?
3. What were his passions (or interests)?
4. What was the source of his writings?
5. What was the name of his book?
6. How many chapters were there in Ibn Bassal's book?
7. What does the book explain?
8. What was the most famous chapter in his book?
9. Ibn Bassal also worked out how to irrigate the land by two ways. Mention them.
10. Quote the sentence which indicates that Ibn Bassal's works have been remarkable despite the fact that he is not well-known broadly.
11. Name two of Ibn Bassal's achievements. (WB; p.22)
12. Find a verb in the second paragraph that means 'supply land with water'.
13. Guess the meaning of 'fertile land' in the third paragraph. Which part of the text illustrates its meaning.
14. Guess the meaning of 'legacy' in the third paragraph. What does the author suggest is Ibn Bassal's legacy to the world?
15. Which paragraph suggests that Ibn Bassal was a <b>polymath</b> ? Give examples of his areas of knowledge.
16. Why do you think the area around Toledo had a 'fast-growing population'?
<ul><li>17. Quotation: Read the quotation. Do you agree with it? Why / Why not? (SB; p.31)</li><li><b>"From India to Spain, the brilliant civilisation of Islam flourished."</b></li></ul>
<u>تأثر النمورة</u> - 141- <u>الفصل الأول</u>

### **Model Answers**

- 1. In Al-Andalus in the eleventh century CE
- 2. who > Al-Ma'mun / which > botany
- **3.** botany agriculture
- 4. all of his writing came from his own 'hands-on' experience of working the land.
- 5. A book of Agriculture
- 6. sixteen chapters

 $7.\ It explains how best to grow trees, fruit and vegetables , as well as <math display="inline">% A^{2}$  , herbs and sweet-smelling flowers.

- 8. the one which described how to treat different types of soil
- 9. finding underground water digging wells
- 10. Although his name is not widely known, Ibn Bassal's legacy to the world has been great.
- 11. writing A Book of Agriculture ; designing water pumps and irrigation systems 12. irrigate
- 13. agriculturally productive ; 'produced more than enough food ...'
- 14. (Legacy) means what someone leaves to the world after their death. Ibn Bassal's legacy is his agricultural instructions and advice.
- 15. the first paragraph: writing , science , engineering, botany , agriculture

16. I think that this is the case because Al-Andalus was a distinguished place. Also, the area was producing a lot of food due to Ibn Bassal's irrigation systems .

17. The quotation shows that Islam was leading the way in the world, showing how great a civilisation it was at that time. I agree with this quotation because we can find the effects of the Islamic civilisation in areas like Mathematics, Science, Literature ...etc

(from India to Spain).

### Vocabulary ; p.23

### Complete the sentences with words from the box. One word is not needed.

benefit , farms , footprint , free , friendly , neutral pedestrian , power , renewable , waste

1. In hot countries, solar \_\_\_\_\_\_ is an important source of energy.

- 2. 'Green' projects are environmentally \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. Wind \_\_\_\_\_\_ are an example of \_\_\_\_\_\_ energy.

4. If a city recycles everything and doesn't throw anything away, it is zero - \_\_\_\_\_

الفصل الأول

ثائر النمورة

- 5. We burn carbon whenever we use oil, coal or gas. This is known as our carbon \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 6. If we replace as much carbon as we burn, we are carbon-\_\_\_\_\_.
  7. A place where no cars are allowed is a car \_\_\_\_\_ zone, and it is \_\_\_\_\_\_.

#### **Answers:**

- 1. power 5. footprint
  - 2. friendly 6. neutral
- 3. farms : renewable 4. waste 7. free; pedestrian

معانى إضافية للحفظ من الـ glossary (قائمة المعانى) من آخر الكتاب

- 1. algebra : a type of mathematics system where letters and symbols are used to علم الجبر represent numbers
- 2. fountain pen: a pen which needs ink cartridge refills and the nib of which takes ink قلم حبر سائل from these cartridges to write
- 3. inoculation: an injection you can have to protect you from a disease تلقيح
- 4. windmill: a building that uses its sails and wind power to طاحونة هواء grind corn into flour

### **PRONUNCIATION (IPA)**

### MINIMAL PAIRS (1)

1. pen - men	2. back - pack	3. robe - rope	4. sin - sing	5. cat - mat
Notes				

-143 -



ثائر النمورة

## REVISION <u>A</u> (SB, p.41) در استه دانتیه پیتیه

# A problem for our wildlife (Reading & Listening) مشكلة تتعلق بحياتنا البرية

Despite the best efforts of conservation groups and <u>their</u> campaigns, the world's population of many species, including African elephants, tigers and seals, is still decreasing. It is people's increasing need for land and resources, along with hunting and fishing, which are responsible for this rapid decline in wildlife.

Exotic mammals such as big cats are threatened the most, but even common birds and insects in many parts of the world are in danger of dying out forever.

و على الرغم من الجهود الفضلى من قبل مجموعات المحافظة على البيئة وحملاتهم إلا أن أنواعاً عدة من الحيوانات مثل **الفيلة** الإفريقية والنمور والفقمات لا زالت أعدادها تتناقص. إن حاجة الناس المتزايدة للأرض والمصادر إلى جانب الصيد وصيد السمك كل ذلك هو المسؤول عن الانحدار السريع في الحياة البرية. كما أن الثدييات الغريبة مثل القطط الكبيرة مهددة أكثر شيء بالانقراض، وحتى الطيور والحشرات المنتشرة في العالم مهددة بالانقراض.

According to a report by the World Wildlife Fund and the Zoological Society of London, wildlife populations around the world have been reduced by 52 per cent on average since 1970 CE.

وبحسب تقرير أعده الصندوق العالمي للحياة البرية وجمعية الحيوان في لندن ، فإن عدد الحيوانات البرية حول العالم قد قل بما معدله 52 % منذ عام 1970 م.

The report also carries the warning that humans are using resources faster than the planet can restore. For example, we are cutting down forests more quickly than newly-planted trees can grow, over-fishing is causing a marine imbalance, and pollution is becoming harder and harder to control.

كما يحمل التقرير في **ثناياه** أن البشر يستخدمون الموارد بشكل أسرع من إمكانية التعويض، فمثلا نحن نقطع الغابات بسرعة أكبر من نمو الأشجار المزروعة حديثاً، كما أن الصيد ا**لجائر** للسمك يسبب عدم توازن بحري، ويصعب السيطرة على التلوث أكثر فأكثر.

The authors of the report hope that this picture will serve as a wake-up call to all of us. **They** want to emphasise how important it is for each one of us to take responsibility for our actions, and to protect our planet by thinking carefully about everything we do.

وختاماً ، يأمل مؤلفو التقرير بأن تكون هذه الصورة نذيراً لنا جميعاً، كما ويريدون تأكيد أهمية أن نكون مسؤولين عن أفعالنا، وأن نحمي كوكبنا عن طريق التفكير ملياً قبل فعل أي شيء.

-144 -

القصل الاول

<u>تائر النمورة</u>

## **QUESTIONS**

1. Name three reasons for the disappearance of many animals around the world.

2. What evidence is there in the text that attempts have been made in the past to stop the decline in the wildlife population?

3. Which species is the most endangered? Which of the reasons, in your opinion, apply to this species in particular?

4. 'More than half the world's wildlife has disappeared in the last fifty years.' Is this statement correct? What evidence is there for this claim?

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Name two examples of how the world is running out of natural resources.

6. What do the authors of the report hope to achieve? There are two possible answers.

\_\_\_\_\_

- 7. Choose the correct meaning of a 'wake-up call'.a. an alarm clock b. a warning c. a telephone call d. a danger
- 8. What do the underlined pronouns refer to? ------

## **MODEL ANSWERS**

1. Animals are disappearing around the world because people need the land ; they are using resources and they are hunting and fishing.

2. The newspaper article informs us that the population of certain species is still decreasing and this is 'despite the best efforts of conservation groups and their campaigns'. This suggests that the work has been going on for some time.

3. Big cats are the most endangered. In my opinion, this is because they are losing their habitats. People are cutting down forests for the wood and for land to build on, which means the big cats have less land to live on. It means the animals that they eat

becoming **scarcer** too. are

4. Yes, the statement is correct. The world's wildlife has been reduced by more than 52 per cent, therefore more than half has disappeared.

5. Forests are being cut down too quickly; there is too much fishing; pollution is out of control. (Any two of them)

6. They hope to show us that responsibility for our actions is ver important.

**OR** They want to show us the importance of protecting our planet in everything we do.

- 7. b. a warning
  - 8. their  $\blacktriangleright$  conservation groups ; they  $\blacktriangleright$  the authors of the report

الفصل الأول

ثائر النمورة

-145 -

# **FREE WRITING**

Sample discursive essay

### The advantages and disadvantages of online shopping

Most people now use the Internet on computers, smartphones and tablets to do a variety of tasks. For many people, these tasks include online shopping. From shopping for groceries to all kinds of clothes shopping, consumers are finding this the easiest way to get what they need, literally at the touch of a button. However, there are numerous and important disadvantages to shopping in this way.

Although using the Internet to shop is usually fairly easy, and there is often greater variety available. It is always a risk because you cannot try on or see in detail the item you wish to buy. In fact, the immediate 'convenience' of shopping in this way can end up being an inconvenience if the item is faulty or does not fit, or is just not what the customer wanted. It is true that the prices are better when you shop online, but, while it might be cheaper there is a distinct disadvantage because you have to wait for the delivery of the purchases. Some people might prefer not to have any personal contact while shopping online, but it can save time in the end since there are always assistants to help with queries you might have during the transaction. In addition to this, there is the issue of Internet payment security; however, recently this has improved a lot.

The Internet has indeed given us a wider choice as consumers, as well as made some aspects of shopping more pleasant and convenient. However, it is nearly impossible, in my opinion, to forget the disadvantages we experience from time to time, since these can and do influence the way in which we choose to stop.

#### **Useful language:**

However, there are many disadvantages ...; It is true that ...; but ...; In addition to this; Moreover, the Internet has changed how we live so dramatically that ...; In my opinion,..; There is a distinct / strong advantage / disadvantage ...

1. Write an essay discussing the advantages and disadvantages of using the Internet.

2. Write an essay about the role of technology in communication.

الفصل الأول

-146 -

ثائر النمورة

### Writing a report

#### **Introduction**

The aim of this report is to provide information concerning participation in the arts in London, England. It will include factors which discourage people from taking part, and suggest ways to increase participation.

#### **Current situation**

I interviewed people between the ages of 15 and 50 who live in London. Just under half of the people who were interviewed said the y took part in music, drama or art. The most popular activity was taking music lessons, followed by going to art galleries and concerts. Drama classes were popular with people in their thirties, because classes are social occasions.

#### **Factors preventing fuller participation**

About 40 per cent of people asked said that they did not enjoy the arts, giving reasons such as boredom for this. The other 60 per cent said that most arts-related activities were too expensive, such as theatre visits or music lessons. Some people said that finding a good teacher was difficult.

#### **Recommendations**

- It is important to focus on those who currently do not participate in the arts at all by • arranging a publicising program for those who want to study music but don't have enough money
- publicising and presenting cheaper theatre performances
- further research into reasons why people do not enjoy the arts.

#### **Useful language:**

The aim of this report is to ...; A study was done to find out ..., About 40 per cent of people asked said that ... The number of ... Conclusion: It appears that ... / It is recommended that ...

-147 -

1. Write a report about health facilities in your area. Remember to include a title, and supply factual information.

2. Write a report about the danger of pollution in the modern world.



التمورة

### Writing a descriptive essay

#### Worldwide transport in the future

It is of course difficult to say exactly what transportation will look like in the future, because of the infrastructural changes that are happening constantly at the moment. To me, it seems that transport may well have changed a lot in one hundred years' time.

Perhaps there will be no more private transport by 2115 CE. It is possible that public transport will have improved so much that no one will need their own cars. We might all be zooming around in ecologically-sound electric buses and trans that will take us to our destinations smoothly.

In order to get to other countries, we will be taking airships, which will be like aeroplanes but with more facilities available. It will be possible to travel to the other side of the world in much less time, because these airships will race around at a far greater velocity.

Finally, modes of transport are always changing, depending on many different factors, but one thing is certain; we will still be traveling the whole world! We might even be able to experience weightlessness by traveling to space!

#### **Descriptive essays include:**

- introduction and personal point of view
- conclusion and personal point of view
- more detailed descriptions
- simile
- language for prediction

**1.** Write an essay about the importance of tourism and archaeological sites in Jordan.

2. Write an essay about the role of the country in supporting inventors of all ages.



التمورة

### Writing a summary of an article

#### Masdar City – a positive step?

Megaprojects are extremely large investment projects, which are designed to encourage economic growth and bring new benefits to cities. Although megaprojects vary in terms of size and cost, they are all, by definition, expensive, public projects that attract a high level of interest and media coverage. Projects range from motorways, airports, stations, tunnels, bridges, etc. to entire city complexes.

The concept of a megaproject is always based on the benefits it brings to a community. However, many megaprojects have been criticised because of their negative effects on a community or the environment. This essay will look at these issues with regard to Masdar City, a megaproject in Abu Dhabi.

Masdar City, which began its development in 2006 CE, will be the world's first carbon-neutral, zero-waste artificially-created city. Covering an area of six square kilometres, when it is completed in 2025 CE, it is expected to house more than 40,000 residents, 50,000 commuters, and 1,500 businesses involved in mainly environmentally-friendly products.

The city will run entirely on renewable energy sources. It is built on an advanced energy grid which monitors exactly how much electricity is being used by every outlet in the complex.

Furthermore, in order to reduce its carbon footprint, Masdar City will be a carfree zone, designed to be pedestrian and cycle-friendly. Electric, driverless cars will operate as public transport vehicles, and the city will be connected to other locations by a network of roads and railways.

Energy will be provided by solar power and wind farms, and there are also plans to build the world's largest hydrogen plant. A desalination plant will be used to provide the city's water, with 80% of water used being recycled. Biological waste will be used as an energy source too, and industrial waste will be recycled.

The current residents of Masdar City are all students at the Masdar Institute of Science and Technology, a university whose students are fully committed to finding solutions to the world's energy problems.

الفصل الأول

-149 -

ثائر النمورة

While the project has the support of many global, environmental and conservation organisations, there is some criticism of it. It is felt that, instead of building an artificial sustainable city, sustainability should be made a priority of existing cities.

In conclusion, the benefits of Masdar City for the community and the environment greatly outweigh any disadvantages. If the aims of the developers are realised, Masdar City will be a blueprint for future urban planning that will inspire similar megaprojects in other countries.

### The Summary of the ABOVE article

The article discusses Masdar City, which is an example of a 'megaproject'. A megaproject is a large-scale investment project designed to stimulate the economy and benefit the population. The author states that this project is currently being undertaken in Abu Dhabi and has attracted a lot of both positive and negative attention.

The author goes on to say that, whilst it has been praised for its environmentally-friendly status, some people argue that we should prioritise sustainability in already existing cities, rather than creating new ones.

Whatever the opinion, it is clear the project is a landmark of urban planning and a precursor of megaprojects to come.

#### **Useful language:**

The article discusses ...; The author states that ...; The author goes on to say that; Some people argue that...; others insist that ...; Whatever the opinion; it is clear that ...; The author concludes that...

Q: Write a summary of the article about Complementary Medicine on page 14 (SB). Remember to be concise and write between 100 and 150 words.

-150 -



### Sample skeleton of an argumentative essay

'Craftspeople are skilled workers and should be paid better salaries.'

It is universally understood that everyone deserves a salary in proportion with the difficulty, danger and ultimate importance of the work that they do. For this reason, it must be argued that craftspeople deserve larger salaries.

#### Body paragraph plan 1

- Crafts are important to continue awareness of history and traditions (opposing view – is this really important any more?)

- Crafts are sold at vast expense; people who make these items should see most of the profits (opposing view – it is no different from any other trade; those who sell take the larger profit)

#### **Body paragraph plan 2**

- Unskilled staff such as waiters are paid low wages because it is a job with a high staff turnover and little skill involved; craftspeople dedicate their lives to this craft and still receive little money for their work (opposing view – the world is changing; there is no place for craftspeople any more)

- The dangerous work that goes into craftsmanship should be well rewarded; it is not comparable to receiving the occasional burn as a waiter or waitress (opposing view – it would drive up the costs of the crafts further)

For the reasons stated above, it can be clearly seen that craftspeople are owed a livable salary that reflects the risk they put themselves in daily, as well as their contribution to keeping Jordanian traditions alive.

-151 -

#### A good argumentative essay:

- presents relevant evidence
- puts forward a convincing argument
- does not ignore one side of the argument
- attempts to persuade the reader to agree



### Sample argumentative essay (opposing view)

**'Craftspeople are skilled workers and should be paid better salaries.'** The job done by craftspeople only helps the economy if the people who publicise and sell their work are successful. Traditional crafts are usually not well publicised and are sold in very small amounts. This means that it would be impossible to provide a full and regular salary to a craftsperson.

These days, it is common for people to choose mass-produced goods for the simple reason that they cost less and can be relied upon. What is more, it is evident that the world is changing, and that the place that craftspeople hold in society is becoming less affordable. For this reason, they should not be paid an increased wage.

It could be argued that craftspeople endure difficult and tiring days and receive little money in recognition of this. However, they learn their trade as apprentices and do not have suspend their income or pay a large amount of money for your years to get a university degree.

Thus it can be seen that craftspeople should not be paid increased salaries, because of the restructured economic system and the consequent shift in the importance of the crafts they produce.

#### **Useful language:**

It is understood that ...; It is often suggested that ...; Many people believe that ...; It is evident that ...; For this reason ...; It could be argued that ...; Thus it can be seen that

Writing skills: Expressing opposition: On the one hand, ... On the other hand, .../ despite In spite of this, ... / On the contrary, ... / Conversely,... Expressing continuation or addition: Furthermore,... / Likewise,.../ One reason for this is ... / In addition,...

1. Write an argumentative essay about museums and modern culture.

-152 -

2. Write an argumentative essay about zoos in the world.

الفصل الأول

<u>نائر النمورة</u>

GUIDED	WRITING
	(الكتابة الد
O. Dood the information in the table	below and then write two contenance
(X). Use the appropriate linking wo	e below, and then write two sentences a rds such as: too, also etc.
1.	► 2013 (W)
	oluntary work
- gain skills.	
- help people.	
- develop the community. - get ethics	
Set curres	
2.	► 2014 (W);L 3
How to communic	
How to communication carefully to others.	
How to communication carefully to others. build on others' ideas.	
How to communication carefully to others. build on others' ideas. boay attention to non-verbal cues.	
How to communication carefully to others. build on others' ideas.	
How to communication carefully to others. build on others' ideas. boay attention to non-verbal cues.	
How to communication isten carefully to others. build on others' ideas. boay attention to non-verbal cues.	
How to communication isten carefully to others. build on others' ideas. boay attention to non-verbal cues.	
How to communication isten carefully to others. build on others' ideas. boay attention to non-verbal cues.	
How to communication isten carefully to others. build on others' ideas. boay attention to non-verbal cues.	
How to communication isten carefully to others. build on others' ideas. boay attention to non-verbal cues.	
How to communication isten carefully to others. build on others' ideas. bay attention to non-verbal cues.	
How to communication isten carefully to others. build on others' ideas. bay attention to non-verbal cues.	
How to communication isten carefully to others. build on others' ideas. bay attention to non-verbal cues.	

#### **3. MINISTRY OF EDUCATION –**

► 2014 (W) Watching sports on  $\overline{TV}$ Watching sports live • exciting • noisy • comfortable and cheap • uncomfortable and expensive


### 4. 2015 - (S)

Read the information below, and then in your ANSWER BOOKLET, write a brief biography using all the given notes below about Najeeb Mahfouth. Use the appropriate linking words.

Name: Najeeb Mahfouth Place / Date of birth: Cairo, 1911 Place / Date of death: Cairo, 2006 **Profession: Novelist** Achievements: - Awarded the Nobel Prize for literature - Father of modern Arabic Literature

الفصل الأول		<u>ثائر النمورة</u>	
	-154 -		

5. Write two sentences about Qasr Bashir. ► 2016 (S)

Location: Jordanian desert.

**Date of construction:** beginning of the 4<sup>th</sup> century.

Purpose of building: protection of the Roman borders.

Description of the building: huge towers, 23 rooms

\_\_\_\_\_

### 6. ► 2017 (W): Write two sentences using ALL the given notes below.

#### Ways to foster creativity in children

- create a creative atmosphere.
- allow children the freedom to explore their ideas.
- encourage children to read for pleasure.
- give children the opportunity to disagree with you.

الفصل الأول	-155 -	<u>ثائر النمورة</u>

تدريب بيتي ذاتي . EDITING ملحوظة: يجب حفظ إملاء جميع كلمات المادة الـ (Glossary)

Imagine you are an editor in the Jordan Times. You are asked to edit the following lines that have four mistakes. Find out these four mistakes and correct them. Write the correct answers down in your ANSWER BOOKLET.

1.

Most doctors used to be scebtical about the validity of homoeopathy, acupunkture and other forms of complemantary medisine.

\_\_\_\_\_ Answers: ------

2.

The low infant mortalety rate, as well as the excellent healthcare system, have been kontributing factors to jordan's healthy bopulation growth.

#### Answers: -----

#### 3. <u>2016 (W)</u>

(one grammar mistake, one punctuation mistake and two spelling mistakes)

Most doctors used to be sceptical about the validity of homoeopathy, acubuncture and other forms of complementary medicine: If patients wanted to receive this kind of non-convintional treatment, they used to have to consult a private practitioner who is likely not to have a medical degree.

-----Answers: -----

### 4. (Revision A): two grammar mistakes and three punctuation mistakes.

Scientists will say that exercise is not only important for general fitness; but that it is also good for the brain, it helped us concentrate better? As a result, we perform better in exams.

-----Answers: -----

-156 -

الفصل الاول



#### 5. 2016 (S): one grammar mistake, one punctuation mistake and two spelling mistakes.

Coffee, chess, flying, the clock, windmills, algebra, soap, the **foantain** pen, crystal glasses, **inokulation**, and carpets... What all these items have in common is their origins, They all have their roots in Arab or Islamic discoveries or inventions **make** in the past. It was the time when Arab and Islamic rulers established one of the largest empires in history.

Answers: -----

#### 6. 2017 (W) : one grammar mistake, one punctuation mistake and two spelling mistakes.

Ibn Rushd, a famous Islamic **bolymath**, wrote books on psychology, geography. physics, maths and music. From the age of 31 until his death about 40 years later, he **writes** an amazing number of books, at least 80 books of his own as well as a large number of **trenslations** of Greek philosophy.

#### Answers: -----

#### 7.2018 (W)

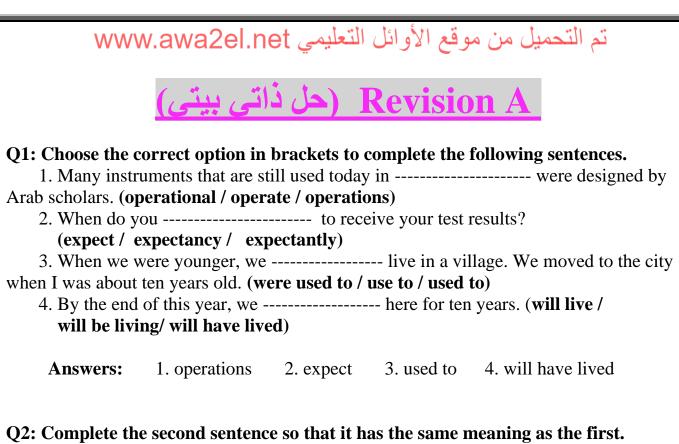
Megaprojects like Masdar City would be very successful in Jordan: it would encourage investment in the country and **penefit** the population by providing an **environmentally-fraendly** space for people to live in. However, we would have to be careful not to overshadow the natural beauty of our country with too much building: we would **had to** find the perfect balance between modernity and nature,

-157 -

Answers: -----

<u>الفصل الأول</u>





1. He has written many books, but his final book made him famous all over the world. He has written many books, but it

- 2. He started studying at 5 p.m. It's 10 p.m., and he's still studying. He \_\_\_\_\_\_ since 5 p.m.
- 3. It is normal for me now to get up early to study. I am \_\_\_\_\_\_.

### Answers:

1. is / was his final book that made him famous all over the world

- 2. has been studying
- 3. used to getting up early to study now

الفصل الأول

### Q3: Circle the correct words. (Initial Test)

1. We're going to Aqaba again **in / on** the summer. I **have / had** been looking forward to it since last year.

2. We had the computer **repaired / repairing** because it had stopped **to work / working**.

3. Mahmoud was walking home when the rain **was starting / started**. It was very heavy, so he **must / can't** have got very wet.

4. In the past, most letters **wrote / were written** by hand, but these days they are usually **typed / typing**.

### Answers:

1. in ; have 2. repaired ; working 3. started ; must 4. were written ; typed

-158 -

<u>ثائر النمورة</u>

# **LANGUAGE FUNCTIONS**

#### **1. Indicating consequence:**

(In this way, As a consequence, Therefore)

- In this way, technology makes communication more convenient.

- As a consequence, family members who are away from home can communicate well with their loved ones.

- Therefore, people can communicate more quickly and conveniently.

### 2. Indicating opposition:

(Despite / Although / However/ Whereas / On one hand , ... On the other hand / In spite of this, ... / On the contrary, ... / Conversely, ... / By contrast)

- **Despite** the recent advances in technology, it is still unreliable and very inconvenient.

- However, social media is time-consuming.

- Whereas, the more quickly and conveniently we communicate, the more likely it is that there will be misunderstandings.

### 3. Expressing continuation or addition:

(Furthermore,... / Likewise, ... / One reason for this is ... / In addition, ... / Moreover / Also )

English helps you to communicate with others. **Furthermore**, it lets you get a better job.

أسئلة وزارية

Study the following sentence and answer the question that follows. (2 points) ▶ 2016 (W)

**Despite** the recent advances in technology, it is still unreliable and very inconvenient. **What is the function of using despite in the above sentence?** 

-----

Eating well is important for good health. **Furthermore,** it helps to make you more active.

What is the function of <u>using furthermore</u> in the above sentence? (2 points) ▶ 2016 (S)

-159 -

\_\_\_\_\_





### Writing Skills: Useful language for reports

#### Introduction

The aim of this report is to .../ This report examines ... / In this report, ...will be examined **Reporting information** 

There are more than .... / Almost three-quarters / the number of .....

#### **Conclusion / Recommendations**

It appears that ... / This results in .../ It is recommended that .../ The best course of action would be to ...

### Study the following sentence and answer the question that follows.

The teacher strongly recommended that the time that students spend .... What is the function of the above sentence?  $\geq 2017$  (S) – 2 POINTS

### **Rhetorical Devices (Literature)**

#### Simile:

- Some robots will look and **sound very** <u>like</u> humans, because technology will have advanced a great deal.

- Treatment and medicines will **taste** <u>as</u> delicious <u>as</u> real food.

#### **Metaphor:**

The world will be <u>at your fingertips</u>.

#### **Onomatopoeia:**

Everywhere we go we will hear the constant **<u>buzz and hum</u>** of technology. **<u>zooming</u>** around ....

#### **Personification:**

Our computers and mobile phones <u>will take care of us</u>, by telling us when to wake up, eat and sleep.

#### **Sensory descriptions:**

hear, listen, say, speak, shout, cry, talk, scream, smell, taste, touch,... etc.

-160 -

الفصل الأول

ثائر النمورة

<u>سؤال وزاري ، شتوية 2017</u>

Study the following sentence and answer the question that follows.

The world will be at your fingertips.

Identify the type of rhetorical device used in the above sentence. ------



New means of transportation <u>will take us</u> to our destinations smoothly. The underlined words in the sentence above represent one of the following rhetorical devices ......

A) simile

B) onomatopoeia

C) metaphor

D) personification

## <u>سؤال وزاري (2022)</u>

Treatment and medicines will **taste as delicious** as real food. **The underlined words in the sentence above represent one of the following rhetorical devices:** 

A) metaphor B) c

B) onomatopoeia

C. simile

-161 -

D. personification

القصل الأول

التمورة

### HOSSan

MODULE 1 access / ækses/ (verb) to find information, especially on a computer access (noun) accessible (adjective)

blog /blog/ (noun) a regularly updated personal website or web page, usually written in an informal style blog (verb)

calculation /kælkju:'lei[ən/ (noun) a way of using numbers in order to find out an amount, price or value calculate (verb)

**computer chip** /kəm'pju:tə tʃɪp/ (noun) a small piece inside a computer which stores information via an electric current

email exchange /'i:meəl 1ks'tfeind3/ (noun) a series of emails between two or more people, each email generally a reply to the previous one email (verb)

filter /'filtə/ (noun) a program that checks whether certain content on a web page should be displayed to the viewer filter (verb)

floppy disk /'flopi disk/ (noun) a flexible, removable magnetic disk that stores computer information

ICT /'ai si: ti:/ (n.abbrev.) Information and **Communication Technology** 

identity fraud /ardentiti: fro:d/ (noun) illegal actions using the identity of someone else, normally to buy things

PC / pi: 'si:/ (noun) an abbreviation for personal computer, a computer that is used by one person at a time

post /poust/ (verb) to put a message or document on the Internet so that other people can see it post (noun)

privacy settings / praivasi 'setingz/ (noun) controls available on social networking sites which let you decide who can see what information

program /'prougram/ (noun) a set of instructions enabling a computer to function; programme (noun) content which is intended to be listened to on radio or watched on television

rely on /rr'lar , on/ (phrasal verb) to have trust or confidence in something or someone reliable (adjective)

sat nav system /sæt næv 'sistem/ (noun) satellite navigation system a system of computers and satellites, used in cars and other places that tells you where something is, where you are or how to get to a place

security settings /səˈkju:rɪti 'setɪŋz/ (noun) controls available on computer programs which let you protect your computer from viruses

smartphone /sma:tfaun/ (noun) a mobile phone with advanced computing technology social media /'səufəl 'mi:diə/ (noun) social interaction between people and communities on websites or blogs

tablet computer /'tæblit kəm'pju:tə/ (noun) a mobile computer, with a touch screen, processor and battery all in one unit

user /ju:zə/ (noun) a person who uses a product or service, especially a computer or another machine

web-building program /web 'bildin 'prougram/ (noun) a software that helps you to create a website

web hosting /web houstin/ (noun) the business of housing, serving and maintaining files for one or more websites

whiteboard /waitbo:d/ (noun) a touchscreen computer program that enables you to draw sketches, write and present ideas and talks to colleagues or students

World Wide Web /w3:ld ward web/ (noun) an information system, known as the Internet, which allows documents to be connected to other documents, and for people to search for information by moving from one document to another

#### **MODULE 2**

acupuncture /ˈækjuːˌpʌŋktʃə/ (noun) a system of complementary medicine in which fine needles are inserted in the skin at specific points

ailment /'eilmənt/ (noun) illness

allergy / æləd3i/ (noun) a reaction of the immune system when it is sensitive to something; this reaction comes in the form of sneezing, itchy eyes or a skin rash allergic (adjective)

antibody / entibodi/ (noun) a substance produced by the body to fight disease apparatus / apparatus/ (noun) the technical equipment or machinery needed for a particular purpose

appendage /ə'pendid3/ (noun) a body part, such as an arm or a leg, connected to the main trunk of the body append (verb)

arthritis /o:'Oraitis/ (noun) a disease causing painful inflammation and stiffness of the joints arthritic (adjective)

artificial /ˌɑ:tɪ'fɪʃəl/ (adjective) made or produced by human beings rather than occurring naturally artifice (noun) --162rtificially (adverb)

20

22



bionic /barbnik/ (adjective) describing a limb or body part that is electronically or mechanically powered

bounce back /bauns bæk/ (phrasal verb) to start to be successful again after a difficult time

cancerous /kænsərəs/ (adjective) something that has or can cause cancer, a very serious disease in which cells in the body begin to grow abnormally cancer (noun)

career /kəˈrɪə/ (noun) a job undertaken for a significant period of a person's life and with opportunities for progress

coma /kəumə/ (noun) a state of unconsciousness caused by a certain injury and that lasts for an extended period of time

**commitment** /kə'mītmənt/ (noun) a promise to do something or to behave in a particular way commit (verb) – committed (adjective)

complementary medicine /komplə'mentri 'medsan/ (noun) medical treatment which provides an alternative to scientific medical practices complement (verb)

conventional /kən'venfənəl/ (adjective) having been used for a long time and is considered usual convention (noun) – conventionally (adverb)

cope with /kaup wið/ (phrasal verb) to deal successfully with, or handle, a situation

cross /kros/ (adjective) angry or annoyed decline /drklam/ (verb) to decrease in quantity or importance decline (noun)

dementia /drmenjə/ (noun) a mental illness the symptoms of which are problems with memory, personality changes and problems with reasoning

drug /drAg/ (noun) a medicine or a substance used for making medicines

expansion / Ik'spæn (and (noun) the act of making something bigger expand (verb) feel blue /fi:1 blu:/ (verb phrase) [idiom] to feel sad

focus on /faukas on/ (phrasal verb) to direct your attention or effort at something specific focus (noun) – focused (adjective)

have the green light /hæv ða grin last/ (verb phrase) [idiom] to have or give permission to go ahead with something or for something to happen

healthcare /hel0kea/ (noun) the prevention or treatment of illness by doctors, dentists, psychologists, etc.

herbal remedy /hs:bəl 'remədi:/ (noun) an extract or mixture of a plant used to prevent, alleviate, or cure disease remedy (verb) remedial (adjective)

homoeopathy /,həumi'ppə0i/ (noun) a system of complementary medicine in which illnesses are treated by minute doses of herbs and -163 other natural substances

immunisation /imjunarzei[an/ (noun) the process by which an individual's immune system becomes protected against an illness immunise (verb) – immune (adjective)

implant /'implaint/ (noun) a piece of tissue, prosthetic device, or other object implanted in the body implant (verb)

life expectancy /lasf spektansi/ (noun) the length of time that a person or animal is expected to live expect (verb) - expectation (noun)

limb /lim/ (noun) arm or leg of a person malaria /mə'leəriə/ (noun) a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes

medical trial /medikal 'traial/ (noun) trial to evaluate the effectiveness and safety of medications trial (verb)

migraine /margrein/ (noun) a very bad headache which often comes with a feeling of sickness and problems with vision

mortality /mortality /mortality /mortality /mortality on a large scale (e.g. infant mortality); the rate of deaths that occur (mortality rate) mortal (noun and adjective) - mortally (adverb)

MRI / em or 'ai/ (noun) (Magnetic Resonance Imaging) a scan that uses strong magnetic fields to make a picture of the inside of someone's body for medical reasons

obese /aubits/ (adjective) extremely fat, in a way that is dangerous to your health **obesity** (noun)

optimistic /,pptə'mistik/ (adjective) believing that good things will happen in the future optimism, optimist (noun)

option /opfon/ (noun) something that is or may be chosen optional (adjective)

out of the blue /aut av da blu:/ (adjective) [idiom] apparently from nowhere; unexpectedly

outpatient /'au?,per[ant/ (noun) someone who goes to a hospital for treatment but does not stay for the night

paediatric / pi:di'ætrik/ (adjective) describing the area of medicine that deals with children and their illnesses paediatrics, paediatrician (noun)

pill /pil/ (noun) a small round piece of medicine to be swallowed whole

practitioner /præk'tı [ənə/ (noun) someone who is qualified or registered to practise a particular occupation or profession practise (verb) practical (adjective) – practically (adverb)

prosthetic /,prəs'θetik/ (noun) an artificial body part; ~ (*adjective*) **limb** describing an artificial body part prosthetics (noun)

publicise /'pablisaiz/ (verb) to give information about something to the public, so that they know about it **publicity (noun)**  23

radiotherapy / reidiou'eropi/ (noun) the use of controlled amounts of radiation (a form of energy) to treat disease, especially cancer

raise /reiz/ (verb) ~ a question to bring up a problem or cast doubt on something

red-handed /red'hændid/ (adjective) [idiom] in the act of doing something wrong

reputation /,repjoter[an/ (noun) the common opinion that people have about someone or something repute (verb)

scanner /'skænə/ (noun) a medical instrument that uses radiography to produce images of the insides of the human body scan (verb)

sceptical /skeptikal/ (adjective) having doubts; not easily convinced sceptic, scepticism (noun)

see red /si: red/ (verb phrase) [idiom] to be angry

setback /setbæk/ (noun) a problem that delays or stops progress, or makes a situation worse side effect /said ifekt/ (noun) effects of medicine on your body in addition to curing pain or illness

**sponsor** /'sponsə/ (verb) to financially support a person or an event sponsor (noun) sponsored (adjective)

strenuous /strenjuəs/ (adjective) using or needing a lot of effort

stroke /strauk/ (noun) an illness when a blood tube in your brain bursts or is blocked, resulting in the brain being unable to function normally

symptom /'simptəm/ (noun) a physical problem that might indicate a disease viable /'varəbəl/ (adjective) effective and able to be successful viability (noun)

ward /wo:d/ (noun) a room in a hospital, especially for patients needing similar kinds of care ward (verb)

white elephant /wait 'eləfənt/ (noun phrase) **[idiom]** something that has cost a lot of money but has no useful purpose

#### **MODULE 3**

algebra / æld31brə/ (noun) a type of mathematics system where letters and symbols are used to represent numbers algebraic (adjective)

**arithmetic** /ə'rıθmətık/ (*noun*) the branch of mathematics concerned with numerical calculations such as addition, subtraction, multiplication and division

artificially-created /o:tr'f1[əli kri'e1təd/ (adjective) not real or not made of natural things but made to be like something that is real or natural create (verb) – creation (noun)

breathtaking /bre0,te1kin/ (adjective) wonderful, awe-inspiring

camera obscura /kæmra pb/skjuara/ (noun) Latin for 'dark room'; an optical device that led to photography and the invention of the camera

carbon-neutral /ka:bən 'nju:trəl/ (adjective) not affecting the total amount of carbon dioxide in Earth's atmosphere neutralise (verb) neutrality (noun)

ceramics /,sə'ræmiks/ (noun) the art of producing something made from clay or porcelain, or the clay or porcelain items themselves ceramic (adjective)

composition /kpmpə'zɪ[ən/ (noun) [of music] a piece of music that someone has written compose (verb)

conservatory /kən'sa:,vətri/ (noun) (American usage for British conservatoire) a school where people are trained in music or acting

craftsman /kra:fts,man/ (noun) someone who is very skilled at a particular craft, a job or an activity that requires skills and in which they make things with their hands

criticise /kritisaiz/ (verb) to judge (something) with disapproval; to evaluate or analyse (something) critic, criticism (noun) - critical (adjective)

demonstration / demon'strei (on/ (noun) an act of explaining and showing how to do something, or how something works demonstrate (verb)

desalination /di;sælrner[ən/ (noun) the process of removing salt from sea water so that it can be used desalinate (verb)

fountain pen / faontin pen/ (noun) a pen which needs ink cartridge refills and the nib of which takes ink from these cartridges to write

furnishings /'f3:n1J1ŋz/ (plural noun) the furniture and other things, such as curtains, in a room furnish (verb)

geometry /dʒi'ɒmətri/ (noun) the branch of mathematics concerned with the properties, relationships and measurement of points, lines, curves and surfaces geometric (adjective) – geometrically (adverb)

glassblowing /gla:sbloun/ (noun) the art of shaping a piece of hot, melted glass by blowing air into it through a tube blow (verb)

grid /grid/ (noun) [energy grid] a system of wires through which electricity is connected to different power stations across a region

ground-breaking /graund/breikin/ (adjective) new, innovative break (verb)

hanging /hænn/ (noun) a large piece of cloth that is hung on a wall as a decoration hang (verb)

inheritance /in/heritans/ (noun) money or things that you get from someone after they -164 - die inherit (verb)

inoculation /ɪˌnɒkjə'leɪʃən/ (noun) an injection you can have to protect you from a disease inoculate (verb) – inoculable (adjective)

installation /.mstə'lerʃən/ (noun) an art exhibit often involving video or moving parts install (verb)

irrigate /IrrigeIt/ (verb) to supply land with water so that crops and plants will grow irrigation (noun)

lifelike /'lanflank/ (adjective) very similar to the person or thing represented

mathematician /ˌmæθməˈtɪʃən/ (noun) a person who studies Mathematics to a very complex level mathematics (noun) – mathematical (adjective)

**megaproject** /megə'prod3ekt/ (noun) a very large, expensive, ambitious business project **minaret** /mmə'ret/ (noun) the tall, thin tower of a mosque from which Muslims are called to prayer

musical harmony /ˈmjuːzɪkəl ˈhɑːməni/ (noun) a pleasant sound in music, made by playing or singing a group of different notes together harmonious (adjective) – harmonise (verb)

outweigh /,au?twei/ (verb) to be more important than something else

pedestrian /pədestriən/ (noun) someone who is walking, especially along a street or another place that is used by cars pedestrian (adjective)

performing arts /pəˈfɔːmɪŋ oːts/ (noun) a type of art that can combine acting, dance, painting and film to express an idea

philosopher /fə'lɒsəfə/ (noun) someone who studies and writes philosophy professionally, or an undergraduate student of Philosophy philosophise (verb) – philosophical (adjective)

physician /fə'zɪʃən/ (noun) someone qualified to practise medicine, especially one who specialises in diagnosis and treatment

**polymath** /'poli,mæθ/ (noun) someone who has a lot of knowledge about many different subjects

**qualify** /kwplifar/ (verb) to be entitled to a particular benefit or privilege by fulfilling a necessary condition **qualification (noun)** 

restore /rr/sto:/ (verb) to repair or renovate a building, work of art, etc., so as to bring it back to its original condition restoration (noun)

revolutionise /,revə'lu:ʃənaɪz/ (verb) to completely change the way people do something or think about something revolution (noun) – revolutionary (adjective)

sand artist /sænd 'a:tist/ (noun) someone who models sand into an artistic form sand art (noun) **showcase** /ˈʃəukeɪs/ (verb) to exhibit or display **showcase** (noun)

**sustainability** /sə,stemə'biləti:/ (noun) the state of being able to continue forever, or for a very long time; for example, the sustainability of the environment involves emitting less pollution and using less water

#### sustain (verb) – sustainable (adjective)

textiles /tekstailz/ (plural noun) types of cloth or woven fabric

translation /trænz'leɪʃən/ (noun) the process of converting documents from one language to another translate (verb) – translator (noun) underline /ʌndə'laɪn/ (verb) to emphasise, to highlight

vary /veari/ (verb) to differ according to the situation variation (noun) - variable (adjective)

visual arts /'vijuəl o:ts/ (noun) art such as painting or sculpture that you look at, as opposed to literature or music

windmill /wm,mil/ (noun) a building that uses its sails and wind power to grind corn into flour

**zero-waste** /**z**IBITRO WEIST/ (*adjective*) producing no waste, or having parts that can be reused

#### **MODULE 4**

academic /,ækə'demik/ (adjective) connected with education, especially at college of university level academic, academy (houn) – academically (adverb)

Agriculture /ˈægrɪ,kʌltʃə/ (noun) the science or practice of farming agricultural (acjective) Astrophysics /ˌæstrəʊˈfizɪks/ (noun) the study of the chemical structure of the stars and the forces that influence them

Business Management /biznis mænid3mənt/ (noun) an area of study which involves learning about running a company, in areas like controlling, leading, monitoring, organising and planning manage (verb) – managerial (adjective)

career advisor /kəˈriə əd yaɪzə/ (noun) someone who provides of formation to help people to make choicer about their training and work advise (verb) – advice (noun)

circulation /,s3:kjə'leɪ[en/ (noun) the movement of blood around the body when it is pumped by the heart; also air ~, the movement of air grculate (verb)

**colloquial** /kəˈləukwiəl/ (*adjective*) (O language or words) used mainly in informal conversations rather than in writing or formal speech

compulsory /kem'pAlsəri/ (adjective) obligatory; required

concentration /kprsontresjon/ (newn) attention, or attention/span, concentrate (ver.)